

GAMBIT

Chess College: Technique

Efstratios Grivas

A step-by-step guide to chess excellence



Chess College 3: Technique

Efstratios Grivas

Translated by Sotiris Logothetis

GAMBIT

First published in Greek language under the series title *Skakistiki Proponisi* by Kedros in 2004
First published in English language in the UK by Gambit Publications Ltd 2006

Copyright © Efstratios Grivas 2004, 2006

Revised and enlarged for the English translation by Efstratios Grivas.

English-language translation © Sotiris Logothetis 2006

The right of Efstratios Grivas to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out or otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

ISBN-13: 978-1-904600-57-2

ISBN-10: 1-904600-57-3

DISTRIBUTION:

Worldwide (except USA): Central Books Ltd, 99 Wallis Rd, London E9 5LN.

Tel +44 (0)20 8986 4854 Fax +44 (0)20 8533 5821. E-mail: orders@Centralbooks.com

USA: Continental Enterprises Group, Inc., 302 West North 2nd Street, Seneca, SC 29678, USA.

For all other enquiries (including a full list of all Gambit chess titles) please contact the publishers, Gambit Publications Ltd, 6 Bradmore Park Rd, Hammersmith, London W6 0DS, England.

E-mail: info@gambitbooks.com

Or visit the GAMBIT web site at <http://www.gambitbooks.com>

Edited by Graham Burgess

Typeset by John Nunn

Cover image by Wolff Morrow

Printed in Great Britain by The Cromwell Press, Trowbridge, Wilts.

Dedications

To my respectful trainers

and

To Elias and Antonis, two good friends

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Gambit Publications Ltd

Managing Director: GM Murray Chandler

Chess Director: GM John Nunn

Editorial Director: FM Graham Burgess

German Editor: WFM Petra Nunn

Webmaster: WFM Helen Milligan

Contents

Symbols	4
Bibliography	5
Introduction	6
Why Do We Lose?	8
Physical and Psychological Factors	9
Literature	11
The Bishop-Pair	12
Bishop against Knight	23
Knight against Bishop	35
Classical Bishop Sacrifice	47
Double Bishop Sacrifice	58
Won Positions	67
Lost Positions	77
Opposite-Coloured Bishops	87
Small Advantages	96
Immobilization	102
Index of Games	109
Index of Openings	111

Symbols

+	check
++	double check
#	checkmate
!!	brilliant move
!	good move
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
?	bad move
??	blunder
+—	White is winning
±	White has a large advantage
±	White is slightly better
=	equal position
∓	Black is slightly better
∓	Black has a large advantage
—+	Black is winning
Ch	championship
Cht	team championship
Wch	world championship
Wcht	world team championship
Ech	European championship
Echt	European team championship
ECC	European Clubs Cup
tt	team event
jr	junior event
wom	women's event
OL	olympiad
rp	rapidplay game
simul	game from simultaneous display
1-0	the game ends in a win for White
1/2-1/2	the game ends in a draw
0-1	the game ends in a win for Black
(n)	<i>n</i> th match game
(D)	see next diagram

Bibliography

Informator; various contributors; Informator 1966-2004
Chess World Championships; James H. Gelo; McFarland 1999
ChessBase Mega Database; various contributors; ChessBase 2004
Encyclopaedia of Chess Endgames (database); various contributors; Informator 2004
Exploring the Endgame; Peter Griffiths; A. & C. Black 1984
Greek Chess Chronicles; Triantafyllos Siaperas; GCF 1970-3
Greek International Masters; Efstratios Grivas; Skyfos 1986
Moscow Chess Seminar; Efstratios Grivas; Aegina 1989
New In Chess (Magazine); various contributors; Interchess BV 1984-2004
New In Chess (Yearbooks); various contributors; Interchess BV 1984-2004
NicBase Database; various contributors; Interchess BV 2004
Pawn Endings; Alexandar Tsvetkov; Chess Enterprises 1985
Personal notes and analysis; Efstratios Grivas; 1980-2004
Rook Endgames; Yuri Averbakh; Sportverlag Berlin 1988
Shakhmatny Biulleten; various contributors; Shakhmatny Biulleten 1985-95
Zurich International Chess Tournament 1953; David Bronstein; Dover 1979

Introduction

Every chess-player who wishes to improve his level in the difficult subject of chess is obliged, first of all, to study methodically and understand the existing principles that govern the theory of the opening, middlegame and endgame.

Most chess-players focus more on the study of opening theory than other aspects of the game. The reasons are probably clear: opening theory is easier to learn and can provide immediate results, although this is based more on the opponent's ignorance than our own abilities. Even for a chess trainer, it is easier to teach some variations from this or that opening or a set of simple tactical motifs than to engross himself in the exposition of middlegame and endgame theory.

Yes, middlegame and endgame theory does exist. The great difficulty in approaching it lies in the fact that it does not follow absolute and clear-cut paths, but rather involves deep research in the ideas and logic by which specific types of positions are treated. Moreover, unlike opening theory, the theory of the middlegame and the endgame does not change rapidly based on modern developments and remains almost intact through the years.

In view of the above, any chess-player who wishes to follow a chess career or simply become a better player must refrain from the commonplace and assume a different approach. He must develop a good understanding of middlegame and endgame theory, so as to be able in his games to proceed in a proper way after his chosen opening has reached its conclusion. The chess-player can differentiate himself only in the opening; there, each one of us brings forth his own beliefs and convictions, and in general his own experiences and preferences. Objectively, no opening loses – but also no opening wins. The opening is just the beginning of the journey and serves to offer us a comfortable start. But to reach the end of this journey successfully we have to count on our knowledge and experience, as regards middlegame and endgame theory.

Endgame theory teaches us two fundamental issues. First, how to extract the maximum from a basic theoretical position with little material, where the experts (and practice comprising thousands of games) have reached definite conclusions. Second, the way in which we can handle an endgame, depending on the material remaining on the board, and the ideas and plans we should employ. This second issue is significantly more difficult to master because, apart from making full use of the first one (we must be aware of the possible outcomes of the endgame in question) it is greatly influenced by our experience and understanding, which are basically derived from the images and impressions we have from related positions. And, of course, a primary role is played by the effort we have invested in studying.

In middlegame theory, things are even tougher. We are obliged to study various types of positions with specific strategic and tactical attributes, so as to understand the underlying ideas and be able to employ them ourselves in similar situations. Besides, while many chess-players have studied these topics and acquired knowledge, it is the application of this knowledge in practice that helps differentiate between them. True, chess is not a simple activity, but it becomes so much more attractive when we acquire this knowledge...

This is the last of three books that deal with middlegame and general chess theory. The purpose of this series is to introduce the reader to advanced training concepts, using the same methods of presentation and instruction that were taught to me personally by famous trainers that I have worked with. I owe to these people gratitude for their valuable contribution to my progress as a chess-player. Besides, the fact that I succeeded in attaining the grandmaster title is owed first and foremost to the education I received and then to my personal work and effort.

Volume 3: Technique

In this final volume we continue our wide-ranging discussion of chess middlegame theory. We focus in particular on certain areas in which knowledge of specific methods, procedures and sequences are especially important, and so can to a degree be considered technical in nature. We also examine the practical problems when handling positions where one side or the other holds a large or decisive advantage. However, as in the two previous volumes, each chapter touches upon many topics, including ones highlighted in other chapters and in other parts of this series. And we begin the discussion by considering some of the factors that can cause players to fail to make the most of their chances and their potential and how these problems can be remedied.

Why Do We Lose?

Every chess-player makes mistakes, sometimes small, sometimes very serious. But a good chess-player rarely repeats the same mistake! Thus, the difference in chess strength is determined by the frequency of mistakes in one's games.

A chess-player who wishes to improve must learn from his mistakes. The most important lesson to be learned is not to repeat them, in the beginning at least, with the same frequency! Even the mistakes we make can, in some way, be categorized:

- **Momentary blindness:** Overlooking moves of the opponent that contain simple tactical threats.
- **Double attack:** Giving the opponent the possibility to attack two of our pieces, without having the possibility of defending both.
- **Overloaded defence:** Our pieces do not defend harmoniously, with the result that more problems are created than are solved.
- **Zwischenzugs (in-between moves):** Overlooking moves in the midst of a tactical sequence that abruptly change the evaluation in our opponent's favour.
- **Ignorance of the opening:** Our knowledge regarding the opening we have chosen is inadequate, or the opening is simply not suited to our style.
- **Theoretical novelty:** Our opponent employs a new move in the opening which either is strong and changes the overall evaluation of the variation, or to which we fail to react properly.
- **Ignorance of strategic concepts:** Our reaction to the strategic demands of the position is below par or even bad, mostly due to ignorance.
- **Ignorance of tactical concepts:** Our reaction to the tactical demands of the position is below par or even bad, mostly due to ignorance.
- **Ignorance of basic endgames:** Our handling of standard endgames is below par or even bad, mostly due to ignorance.
- **Incorrect handling of the attack:** Our handling of the attack is not governed by the relevant principles.
- **Incorrect handling of the defence:** Our handling of the defence is not governed by the relevant principles.
- **Incorrect handling of the clock:** Common and unjustified time-pressure.
- **Psychological reasons:** Fear of: losing the game, the opponent, the position, time-pressure, etc.

Consequently, in order to improve we have to learn from our mistakes and increase our knowledge.

Physical and Psychological Factors

In the summer of 1984 I participated (along with Vasilios Kotronias) in a special chess education seminar in Moscow. The sessions there were truly exhausting but very significant, laying the proper foundations for my further progress and my ascent to the grandmaster title.

Among other instructional subjects, my interest was drawn to my meetings with Dr N. Alexeev (Professor of Psychology) and Dr Y. Zmanovsky (Professor of Medicine). These two scientists introduced me to another side of chess that until then I ignored or refused to 'accept'.

In particular (among other issues) the following question was posed and discussed: which physical and psychological assets are necessary for a successful chess career? On the basis of relevant research conducted since the beginning of the previous century, these assets (according to the two renowned scientists) are split in two main categories, innate and attainable.

As innate chess assets we can mention the following:

- 1) Self-control.
- 2) Ability to think on subjects.
- 3) Intense mental activity.
- 4) Obedience of will.
- 5) Proper distribution of attention.
- 6) Perception of position dynamics.
- 7) Combinative creative skill.

The following can be classified under the header 'attainable chess assets':

- 1) Good health condition.
- 2) Strong nerves.
- 3) Perception of data conveyed by our senses.
- 4) Objective thought-process.
- 5) Powerful special memory.
- 6) Feeling for position (combination of thought and emotions).
- 7) High mental level.
- 8) Control of emotional urges.
- 9) Self-confidence.

The innate assets can be further enhanced and developed, but the attainable ones are purely a matter of education. Endless work and systematic training in order to improve our personal traits and the 'required assets' are essential for our overall chess improvement and the climb up to the grandmaster title.

Naturally, without the help of a specialized trainer or advisor, the trainee finds it difficult to understand or try to improve the above-mentioned assets. Besides, all these assets refer exclusively to chess and have no direct bearing on our other interests. For example, 'powerful special memory' may refer exclusively to chess-related matters (data), as opposed to other matters; naturally, the opposite is also possible. Each of us is unique.

Chess-players tend to ignore the proper state of their health, consequently being in serious danger of suffering heart problems due to the combination of lack of physical training and daily stress

stemming from preparation for and participation in competitions. Thus, workout or sport activities in general is essential, not only to protect our precious health but also to ensure better results over a longer period of time.

Another topic that was addressed was the 'time-frame' of training in relation to the scale of our mental activities, and how we are able to attain maximum performance in it.

Science almost unanimously accepts the following categorization of people:

1) *Larks*: their mental processes are most efficient during the first half of the day, falling off during the second half. Approximately 25% of the world's population belongs in this category.

2) *Owls*: their mental processes are most efficient during the second half of the day and especially during the evening hours. They usually go to sleep late and wake up accordingly late. Approximately 30% of the world's population belongs in this category.

3) *Arrhythmics*: for these people mental processes do not display any special ups and downs during the day or night. Approximately 45% of the world's population, the largest part, belongs to this category.

In practice, all top chess-players belong to the 'Owls' category! The explanation is simple and is directly related to the standard time-frame of chess competitions, which mostly take place during the second half of the day. Therefore, the chess-player 'must' place himself in this category (as far as possible) and adapt his training schedule accordingly.

Another important topic is the chess-player's nutritional habits. In general he should not deviate from his customary diet as regards the type and quantity of food he consumes (no exertions!), as each organism has different needs and habits. Special attention must be paid to the fact that many chess-players mistakenly support the concept of the 'empty stomach' during competitions.

Consumption of food should take place 60-90 minutes before the start of play, as this time ensures the possibility of adequate absorption of the food, consequently providing the brain with 'fuel'.

During the game one may consume small amounts of caffeine (1-2 cups of coffee or tea) as well as chocolate, which is quickly absorbed by our metabolism (in 2-3 minutes); this does not mean that any other light food is less useful. It is self-evident that alcohol is strictly forbidden.

Naturally, all of the above are general principles. We must never forget that each human being has his own peculiarities and must consequently try to identify his own specific requirements.

Literature

The question concerning every young and ambitious chess-player, apart from the selection of the proper trainer, revolves around the selection of the proper literature, through which he will be taught the secrets of chess.

The number of books available is truly immense and it is often hard to determine which ones are most worthy of study. I am convinced that every good chess-player can suggest certain books, but opinions often differ, thus making the process of selection more difficult. My subjective opinion, based on those that I personally found most useful, is as follows:

1) *Opening Books*: The student, after forming his own opening repertoire, would do well to get hold of the five volumes of the *Encyclopaedia of Chess Openings* (Informator). Later on he may refer to *Opening Monographs* (Informator) or to specialized books on the openings he is interested in.

2) *Middlegame Books*: I can suggest *Chess Fundamentals* (Jose Raul Capablanca), *Modern Ideas In Chess* (Richard Réti), *My System* (Aron Nimzowitsch), *Play like a Grandmaster, Think like a Grandmaster* and *Train like a Grandmaster* (Alexander Kotov).

3) *Endgame Books*: A good first choice is *Basic Chess Endings* (Reuben Fine, revised by Pal Benko) and, later on, *Exploring the Endgame* (Peter Griffiths) and *The King in the Endgame* (Edmar Mednis).

4) *Books on Various Topics*: Excellent books in this category are: *Zurich International Chess Tournament 1953* (David Bronstein), *The Art of Chess Analysis* (Jan Timman), *Chess for Tigers* (Simon Webb), *Montreal 1979* (Mikhail Tal et al.), *Akiba Rubinstein* (two volumes; John Donaldson & Nikolai Minev) and *My 60 Memorable Games* (Robert Fischer).

5) *Magazines*: My main suggestion is *New in Chess Magazine* (8 issues per year), which I regard as the best in the world. Other good publications are the *British Chess Magazine* and *Inside Chess* (now extinct).

Naturally, all the above are my personal preferences. It is these books that I was taught from and that I use myself to teach. There are of course other good books out there, some that either evade my memory or that I simply do not know of.

Just like an athlete collects his gear, a chess-player must collect those books that will help him train better, more efficiently and productively. In cooperation with his trainer, he will be able to comprehend and absorb the knowledge enclosed in them. And then he is 'doomed' to improve!

The Bishop-Pair

The possession of a pair of bishops (against a bishop and a knight, or a pair of knights) is an important strategic element that may guarantee superiority and even determine the outcome of the game.

The basic requirements for the exploitation of this element are:

- 1) Open centre (currently or in the future);
- 2) Presence of pawns on both flanks.

Consequently, possession of the bishop-pair does not always guarantee an advantage. Only after careful examination of the respective pawn-structures and the situation in the centre are we able to determine whether possession of this element is an advantage.

Most chess-players have a strong liking for the bishop-pair regardless of the specific features of the position. This phenomenon has a simple explanation: a strong positional player can more easily transform the position so as to suit the bishops than to suit a pair of knights. However, it has to be reminded that it is the pawns (placement, pawn-chains), the soul of the game, that determine whether possession of the bishop-pair is an advantage.

The strength of the bishop-pair (provided of course that the above-mentioned requirements are met) can be exploited either in the middle-game or the endgame.

In the middlegame, bishops can control many squares and from a distance; this implies better control of the position and the prospect of creating a direct attack, either against the king or against other weaknesses. Bishops are also able to restrict the opponent's pieces and create severe (and often insoluble) problems for the opponent, exactly due to their long range of action, which allows them to switch quickly from one target to another without even needing to approach it.

In the endgame the power of the bishop-pair is decisive, since the absence of an adequate

number of defensive pieces allows the bishops to impose their control on the position almost entirely. It is then possible, by skilful manoeuvring, to restrict the opponent's pieces and highlight weaknesses and entry squares.

Just like with any other strategic element, the boundaries between success and failure are not always clearly visible. The examples that follow will help to impose on the reader a deeper understanding of the positive aspects of the bishop-pair.

Schuh – Grivas

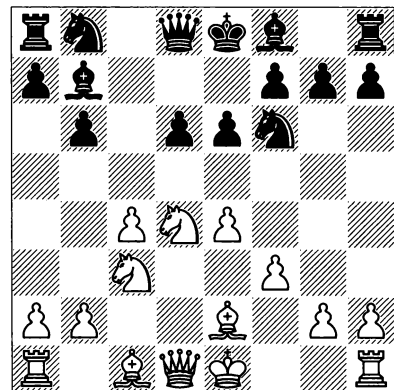
Strasbourg 1984

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 c5 3 ♖f3 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 b6!?

This move prevents White from fianchettoing his bishop on g2 and invites a transition to a standard set-up called the 'hedgehog'.

5 ♖c3 ♗b7 6 f3! e6 7 e4 d6 8 ♗e2 (D)

B



8...♗e7

Another option is 8...a6!? 9 0-0 ♗e7 10 ♖a4+ ♖d7 11 ♖xd7+ ♖bxd7 with chances for both sides.

9 ♖a4+ ♖fd7!

The only good move. 9...♖bd7?! 10 ♖c6! allows White to make a favourable exchange,

while 9...♖d7?! 10 ♖xd7+ ♘xd7 (if 10...♗bxd7 then 11 ♗db5 and 12 ♗f4 with strong pressure) is hardly optimal either.

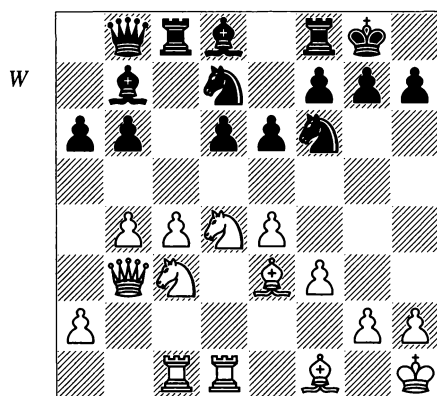
10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖d1 a6 12 ♗e3 ♖c7 13 ♖ac1 ♗f6

Perhaps Black should have preferred 13...♗c6 but in any case Black has the luxury to waste some time due to the specific nature of the 'hedgehog' set-up, allowing for slow positional manoeuvres.

14 ♗f1 ♗bd7 15 ♘h1 ♖ac8 16 b4!

White gains space on the queenside and denies the black knights access to the c5-square.

16...♖b8 17 ♖b3 ♗d8!? (D)



An interesting and, nowadays, common regrouping, aiming to place the black bishops on b7 and c7; from there, in combination with the central break ...d5, they will be able to target the white king.

18 ♗g1 ♗c7 19 ♗a4 ♖fd8

Simply a waiting move. 19...♘h8 would initiate another typical plan in this structure, namely ...♗g8 and ...g5.

20 c5!? dxc5 21 bxc5 (D)

21...♗f4!

The only move. White would obtain a slight but permanent advantage after 21...bxc5?! 22 ♗xc5 ♗xc5 23 ♖xc5.

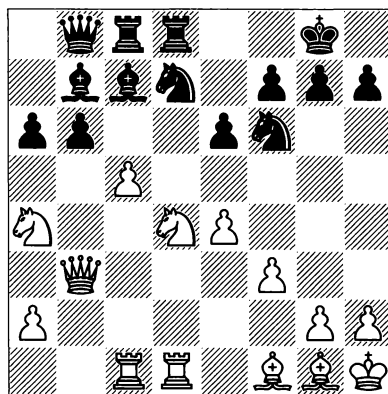
22 ♖b1!

22 c6? ♗xc1 23 ♖xc1 b5 would turn out pretty badly for White.

22...b5 23 ♗e2?!

White had the much better 23 ♗b6! ♗xb6 (23...♖xc5? 24 ♗xe6!; 23...♗xc5? 24 ♖a3!

B

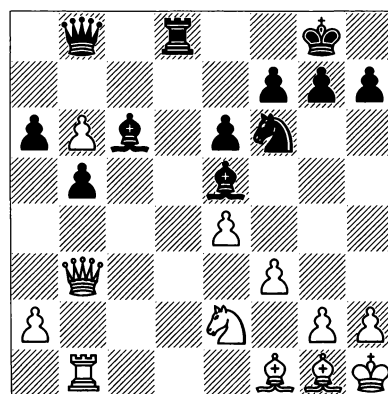


♖c7 25 ♗e2!) 24 cxb6, with an unclear position, at his disposal.

23...♗e5 24 ♗b6 ♗xb6 25 ♖xd8+ 25 cxb6 ♗d7! ♭.

25...♖xd8 26 cxb6 ♗c6! (D)

W



Preventing 27 a4 and targeting the b6-pawn.

27 ♖d1! ♖xd1 28 ♖xd1 h6

28...♗d7?! leads only to equality: 29 ♗d4! ♖xb6 30 ♗xb5 ♖a5 31 ♗d4 ♗xd4 32 ♖xd4 ♖xa2 33 ♖a7! a5 34 ♖c7 ♖a4 35 ♖d8+ ♗f8 36 ♗c5 ♗e8 37 ♗g1! =.

29 ♖c1 ♖b7!

The only move to defend against both of White's threats (♖xc6 and f4).

30 ♗d4 ♗d7 31 ♖c3 f6! 32 ♖b3?

White falters. 32 ♗xe5?! fxe5 was also unsatisfactory for him, but he should have played 32 ♖a5! and then a4, when his queenside initiative enables him to maintain the dynamic balance.

32...♙f7! 33 ♖g1 ♜xb6! 34 f4 ♕d6! 35 ♜d4 ♜c4!

Black had no choice but to return his material gain, but in fact his only option is also a pleasant one. In order to regain the pawn, White must simplify into an endgame where Black's bishops dominate, while he also foregoes any chance to 'annoy' Black.

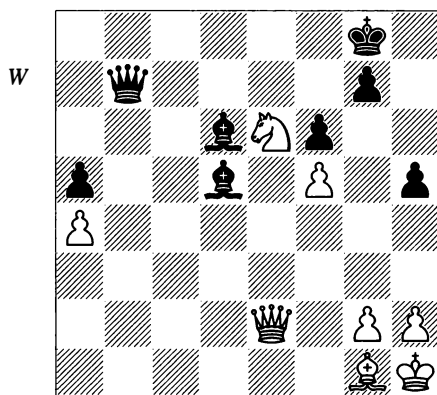
36 ♕xc4 bxc4 37 ♖xc4 ♕xe4! 38 ♖xe6+ ♙g6 39 ♖g4+ ♙h7 40 f5 ♕d5 41 ♜e6 ♙g8

Escaping from a possible future perpetual check (with ♖g6-e8).

42 a4

If 42 ♖g6 then 42...♖f7.

42...h5! 43 ♖e2 a5! (D)



Black fixes the target pawn on a light square, where it will always be threatened by the d5-bishop. Black's bishop-pair, augmented by the fact that there are no central pawns and that play develops on both flanks, prove deadly. White has no possibility of creating counterplay, and is thus condemned to a slow but certain death.

44 h3 h4 45 ♜d4 ♕e4 46 ♜f3 ♕g3! 47 ♜d2 ♕c6 48 ♕h2?!

This speeds up the finish. White should have tried 48 ♜c4 ♕c7.

48...♖d7! 49 ♕xg3 hxg3 50 ♜f1 (D)

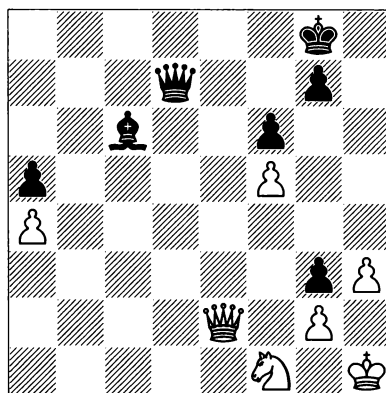
50 ♖c4+ ♕d5 51 ♖c2 ♖e8! does not save White either.

50...♖xf5 51 ♜xg3 ♖xh3+ 52 ♙g1 ♖d7!

Certainly not 52...♖xg3? 53 ♖e6+ ♙f8 54 ♖xc6, when Black has lost the greater part of his advantage.

53 ♜h5 ♖d4+! 54 ♙f1

B



54 ♙h1? loses on the spot: 54...♖a1+! 55 ♙h2 ♖e5+.

54...♕e4! 55 ♜f4 ♖xa4 56 ♖h5 ♖a1+ 57 ♙f2 ♖d4+ 58 ♙g3 ♖e3+ 0-1

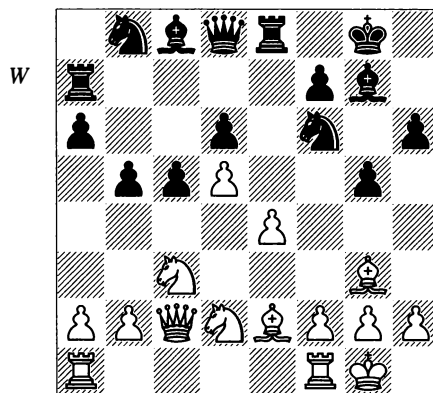
Grivas – K. Dimitriadis

Xilokastro 1984

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜f3 c5 4 d5 exd5 5 cxd5 d6 6 ♜c3 g6 7 e4 ♕g7 8 ♕g5 h6 9 ♕h4 a6 10 ♜d2 b5 11 ♕e2 0-0 12 ♖c2 ♜e8 13 0-0 g5

13...♜bd7 14 a4 b4 15 ♜d1 b3!, with complex play, is another option.

14 ♕g3 ♜a7 (D)



This idea of Suba's gave a new lease of life to this variation.

15 a3!?

A new move. In earlier games White had played 15 a4 b4 16 ♜d1 ♜ae7 17 ♕d3 with chances for both sides.

15...♖a7 16 ♖ac1!

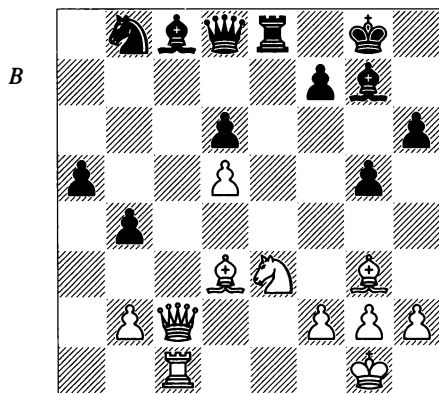
The premature 16 b4?! cxb4 17 axb4 ♖c7! would cost White at least one pawn. But now Black is practically obliged to accept the pawn sacrifice that White is offering, as he has no other useful option.

16...b4 17 axb4 cxb4 18 ♖d1 ♖xe4

Black could also capture the other pawn: 18...♖xd5!? 19 ♖c4! (19 exd5? ♖xe2 20 ♖e3 f5!) 19...♖f4 20 ♖e3 with decent compensation for White in an unclear position.

19 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 20 ♖d3 ♖e1

Exchanges normally favour the defending side.

21 ♖e3 ♖xf1+ 22 ♖xf1 a5 23 ♖g1! (D)

White's position is more comfortable. In return for the pawn White is better developed, controls the open c-file and the f5-square and can prepare an attack against the black king.

23...♖d4

White would be clearly better after 23...♖a6? 24 ♖f5! ♖f8 (24...♖xd3 25 ♖xd3 ♖f8 26 ♖d4! threatening 27 ♖xd6!) 25 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 26 ♖c6!. But now Black is threatening 24...♖xe3!.

24 ♖d2!!

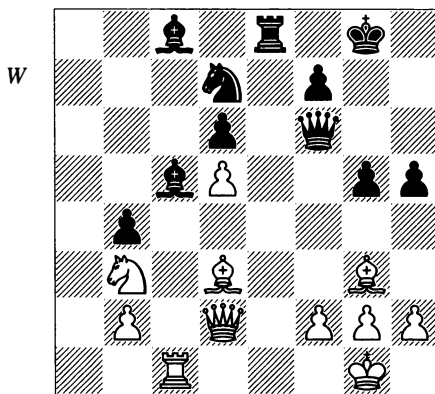
An excellent move, stopping both 24...♖xe3 and 24...♖c5 (the latter due to 25 ♖xc5), while simultaneously threatening 25 ♖h7+ or 25 ♖b5.

24...♖f6 25 ♖c4

White regains the pawn while retaining his edge.

25...♖c5 26 ♖xa5 ♖d7 27 ♖b3! h5! (D)

The only way to prevent the loss of another pawn.



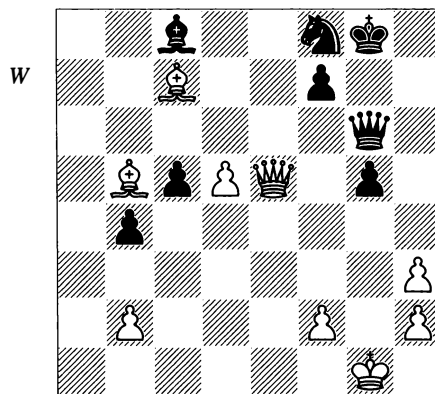
By means of a tactical sequence, White obtains two very significant positional advantages, namely the bishop-pair and a passed d-pawn. Usually this is enough for victory and indeed White's position after this sequence is winning.

28 ♖b5! h4 29 ♖xc5 dxc5 30 ♖c7! h3 31 gxf3 ♖e4 32 ♖e1! ♖xe1+

White wins in case of 32...♖d4? 33 ♖e8+ ♖f8 34 ♖e2 ♖xh3 35 ♖e5!.

33 ♖xe1 ♖f8 34 ♖e5! ♖g6 (D)

Neither does 34...♖xe5 35 ♖xe5 ♖xh3 36 ♖f6! g4 37 ♖e7 complicate White's task.

**35 ♖d8?**

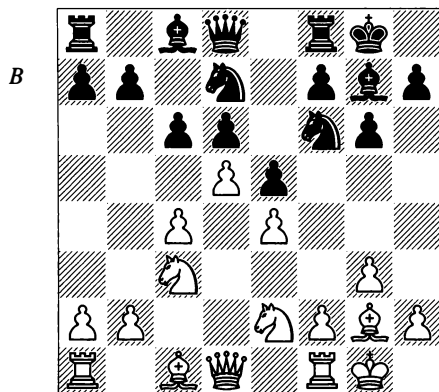
This allows 35...♖b1+ 36 ♖g2 ♖g6 37 ♖xg5 ♖e4+, when Black is back in the game. 35 ♖f1 is better.

35...♖h7? 36 ♖f1 c4? 37 ♖a5 c3 38 bxc3 b3 39 c4! f6 40 ♖b8 ♖e8 41 ♖xb3 ♖f5 42 c5 ♖g7 43 c6 ♖h6 44 ♖c3 ♖e4 45 d6 ♖e6 46 d7 ♖d5 47 f3 ♖e7 48 d8 ♖a7+ 49 ♖b6 1-0

Smagin – Grivas*Moscow 1984*

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♟g7 4 ♟g2 0-0 5 ♟c3 d6
6 e4 ♟bd7 7 ♟ge2 e5 8 0-0 c6 9 d5!? (D)

9 h3 is more common, but not 9 f4?!, which allows Black to seize the initiative by 9...exd4 10 ♟xd4 ♟b6!.

**9...c5**

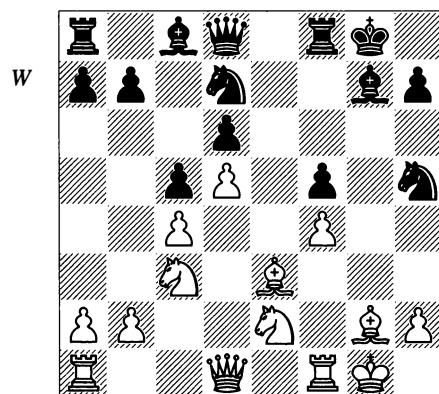
Essentially the only option. 9...cxd5?! 10 ♟xd5 ♟xd5 11 ♟xd5 ♟b6 12 ♟d3 would be comfortably better for White.

10 f4 exf4

And definitely not 10...♟e8? 11 f5!.

11 gxf4 ♟h5! 12 ♟e3 f5 13 exf5

After the erroneous 13 ♟g3? ♟xg3 14 hxg3 ♟xc3! 15 bxc3 fxe4 Black is better.

13...gxf5! (D)

Black has equalized.

14 ♟g3?!

White should instead have tried 14 ♟d2 and 15 ♟ae1.

14...♟xg3 15 hxg3 ♟f6! 16 ♟f3 ♟g4!

Forcing White to surrender his bishop-pair and, consequently, the advantage to Black.

17 ♟xg4 fxg4 18 ♟d2 ♟f5 19 ♟ae1 ♟f6

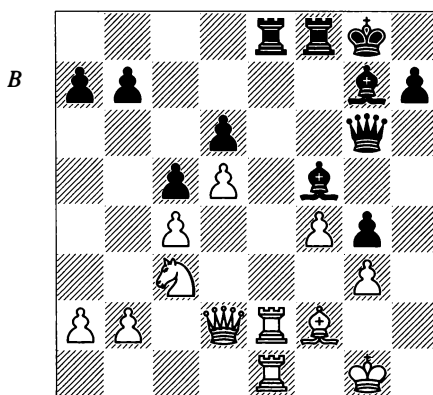
19...♟d7 ♭ was also possible.

20 ♟f2

Threatening to equalize with 21 ♟e4!.

20...♟ae8 21 ♟e2!

21 ♟b5? ♟e4! intending 22...♟h6! would be a bad idea for White.

21...♟g6 22 ♟fe1 (D)**22...♟xc3?**

A very bad move, surrendering the bishop-pair for no good reason. Black should of course had played 22...♟xe2! 23 ♟xe2 (not 23 ♟xe2? ♟xc3! and Black can put the c4-pawn under pressure) 23...♟e8 with a small but permanent advantage. The text-move was prompted by a mistaken evaluation of the position, by which Black believed he enjoyed decisive attacking opportunities along the weakened light squares around the white king.

23 ♟xc3 ♟e4 24 ♟e3?!

White could have put Black's concept in question with the energetic continuation 24 ♟e3! ♟h5 25 ♟xe4! ♟xe4 26 ♟xe4, which Black had completely underestimated when choosing 22...♟xc3?.

24...♟f3 25 ♟h2 ♟e7

25...♟e4! seems better.

26 ♟c2! ♟fe8 27 ♟xg6+ hxg6 28 ♟f2 a6?!

Time-pressure takes its toll. Black would retain an edge after 28...♔g7! with the idea of ...a6 and ...b5. But now White, with care and accuracy, steers the game towards a draw.

29 ♖h6! ♔g7 30 f5! gxf5 31 ♖xd6 b5 32 ♖xa6 bxc4 33 d6 ♖b7 34 ♖h6+ ♔f7 35 ♖xe8 ♔xe8 36 ♖c1 ♔d7 37 ♔e3 ♖b4 38 a3 ♖b3+ 39 ♔f4 ♖b7 40 ♖a7 ♔xd6 41 ♔xf5 ♖c8+ 42 ♔e4 ♖b7+ 43 ♔f5 ♖c8+ 1/2-1/2

Grivas – Barlov

Kastel Stari 1988

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♖c3 c6 4 e4 ♖bd7 5 ♖f3 e5 6 ♖e2 ♖e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♖b1!?

White's alternatives include 8 ♖c2 and 8 d5.

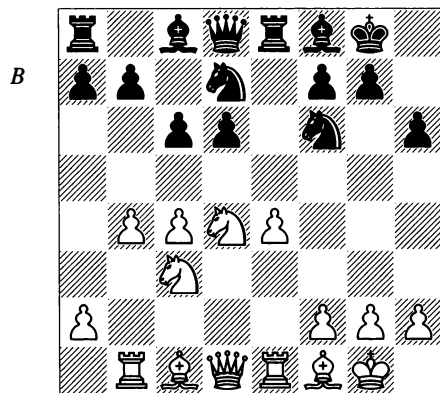
8...♖e8 9 ♖e1 exd4?!

This exchange in the centre is inferior to the more common 9...a6 and 9...♖c7.

10 ♖xd4 ♖f8 11 ♖f1 h6

Preparing ...d5, which is not adequate at this point: 11...d5?! 12 exd5 ♖xe1 13 ♖xe1 cxd5 14 cxd5 ♖b6 15 ♖g5! ±.

12 b4 (D)



12...♖b6

Again 12...d5?! 13 exd5 ♖xe1 14 ♖xe1 cxd5 15 c5! would be good for White.

13 ♖f4 ♖g4! 14 h3

The careless 14 ♖c2?! ♖f6 15 ♖d2 ♖e6! (15...♖xf2? 16 e5!) even passes the advantage to Black.

14...♖f6! 15 ♖g3 ♖e5 16 ♖b3 a5

White retains the upper hand after both 16...♖exc4? 17 ♖xc4 d5 18 ♖xd5! cxd5 19 e5

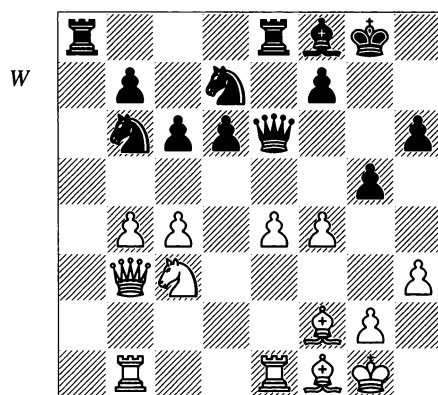
and 16...♖e6 17 ♖xe6 ♖xe6 18 a4! followed by 19 a5 (but not 18 f4? ♖exc4 19 f5 ♖f6 20 ♖xc4 ♖d4+!).

17 a3 axb4 18 axb4 ♖e6 19 ♖xe6 ♖xe6 20 f4! ♖ed7

The tactical shot 20...♖exc4? would be a mistake: 21 f5 ♖f6 22 ♖xc4 ♖d4+ 23 ♖f2 and White wins.

21 ♖f2 g5?! (D)

This move seems to cause White problems, but in fact Black should have preferred the quiet 21...g6 ±.



22 e5!

The correct reaction. White refuses to weaken his king (22 g3?) or surrender the very important e5-square (22 fxg5?). Instead, he opens up the position, hoping to benefit from his potentially powerful bishop-pair and the weaknesses around Black's king caused by the ambitious 21...g5?!

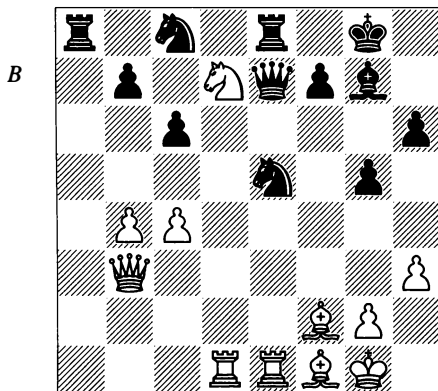
22...dxe5 23 fxe5 ♖g7 24 ♖bd1 ♖c8 25 ♖e4?!

White should have proceeded in the same dynamic spirit with 25 ♖d5!! cxd5 26 cxd5 ♖e7 (26...♖g6? 27 ♖d3 ♖h5 28 g4!) 27 d6 ♖d8 (27...♖f8 28 ♖b5 ♖cb6 29 ♖xb6 ♖xb6 30 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 31 d7 ♖d8 32 e6! +-) 28 e6! fxe6 29 ♖xe6 ♔h8 (29...♖xe6 30 ♖xe6+ ♔h8 {30...♔f8 31 ♖c4}) 31 ♖d4 ♖xd4+ 32 ♖xd4 ♖f6 33 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 34 d7 ♖xd7 35 ♖xd7 ±) 30 ♖d4! ♖f6 31 d7! ♖xd7 32 ♖xf6 and it becomes clear that Black will not be able to survive.

25...♖xe5

Another option was 25...♙xe5!? 26 ♖f3! intending 27 ♖g3 and 28 ♙d3, with initiative for White.

26 ♖c5 ♖e7 27 ♖d7! (D)



27...♖d6?

A serious error, induced by time-trouble. Black's only chance lay in 27...f6! 28 ♙d3!! ♖f7 29 ♙f5 ♖xd7 30 ♙xe8+ ♖xe8 31 ♙xd7, when White has a strong initiative for just one pawn and his light-squared bishop has no worthy opponent. On the other hand, 27...♖h8? loses quickly to 28 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 29 ♙xe5 ♖xe5 30 ♙e1 ♖xe1 31 ♙xe1 ♙xe1 32 ♖c3+. After the text-move, Black falls victim to a simple combination that costs him two minor pieces for a rook. The resulting position is easily won for White.

28 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 29 ♙xe5! ♖xe5 30 ♙g3 ♖e3+ 31 ♖xe3 ♙xe3 32 ♙xd6 ♙d8 33 c5 ♙b3 34 ♙d4 ♙b2 35 ♙e4 ♙a8 36 ♙c4 ♙a1+ 37 ♖h2 ♙c1 38 ♙e8+ 1-0

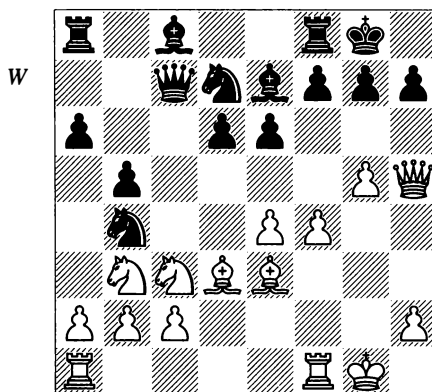
Bellia – Grivas
Vinkovci 1989

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖b6 5 ♖b3 ♖f6 6 ♖c3 e6 7 ♙d3

In the same tournament I also had to meet 7 a3 ♙e7 8 ♙e3 ♖c7 9 ♙d3 d6 10 f4 a6 11 ♖f3 b5 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♖d4 ♖xd4 14 ♙xd4 e5 = Krajna-Grivas, Vinkovci 1989.

7...♙e7 8 ♙e3 ♖c7 9 f4 d6 10 ♖f3 a6 11 0-0 0-0 12 g4 b5 13 g5 ♖d7 14 ♙h5 ♖b4!? (D)

A novelty and an improvement over the standard 14...g6?!



15 ♙f3 g6 16 ♖h6 f5 17 gxf6?!

This is incorrect. 17 exf5!? exf5 18 ♙h3 ♙f7 is unclear and surely preferable from White's point of view.

17...♙xf6 18 ♙g3

18 ♖d4?! e5! gives Black an outpost on e5.

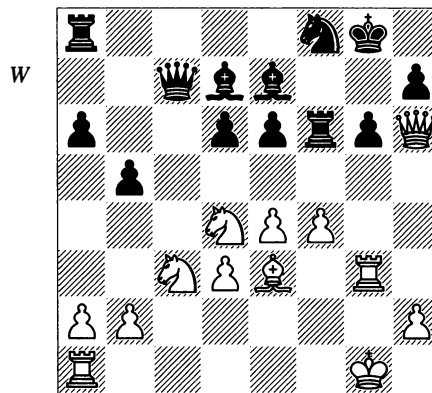
18...♖f8 19 ♖d4

The pseudo-active 19 e5?! dxe5 20 fxe5 ♙f7 (20...♖xe5? 21 ♙d4) 21 ♙e4 ♙b7 would give Black the advantage.

19...♖xd3

A forced exchange. Instead, 19...e5? is much worse: 20 ♖f5! ♙xf5 21 exf5 ♖xd3 22 ♖d5!.

20 cxd3 ♙d7! (D)



Black has repulsed White's aggression while also catering for the future by obtaining the bishop-pair.

21 a3

White cannot expect anything but trouble if he continues 21 f5? b4! 22 fxe6 bxc3 23 exd7 cxb2.

21...♠f7 22 ♖c1 ♜d8 23 ♘ce2?!

White should have chosen 23 ♘f3! intending 24 d4 instead.

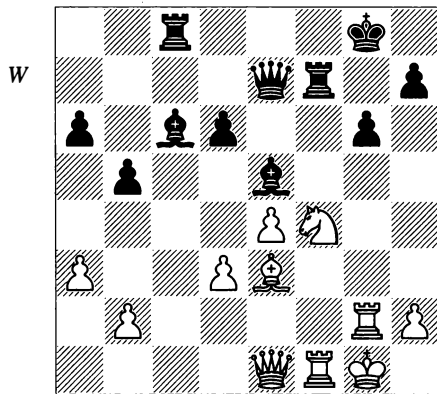
23...♙f6! 24 ♖g2 ♙g7 25 ♜g5 e5! 26 ♘c6

Black obtains complete control over the position after 26 ♜xd8?! ♠xd8 27 ♘c6 ♙xc6! 28 ♠xc6 d5!.

26...♜e8 27 ♘b4 ♘e6 28 ♜g3 exf4 29 ♘xf4 ♙e5 30 ♘bd5 ♠c8! 31 ♠f1

And here 31 ♠xc8? ♜xc8 32 ♘b6 ♜c6 33 ♘xd7 ♜xd7 34 ♠f2 g5! is just winning for Black.

31...♙c6 32 ♜e1 ♘xf4 33 ♘xf4 ♜e7! (D)



The position slowly clarifies in Black's favour. His bishops keep all of White's possible plans in check.

34 ♘h5 ♠xf1 + 35 ♜xf1 ♠f8 36 ♜e2 ♙d7!

With various threats, such as 37...♙h3!.

37 d4?!

White's last mistake, fatally weakening the e4-pawn. He had to sit tight with 37 ♘g3.

37...♙h8 38 ♘g3 ♙g7 39 ♠f2 ♠c8 40 ♜d3 ♜e6! 41 ♘e2?!

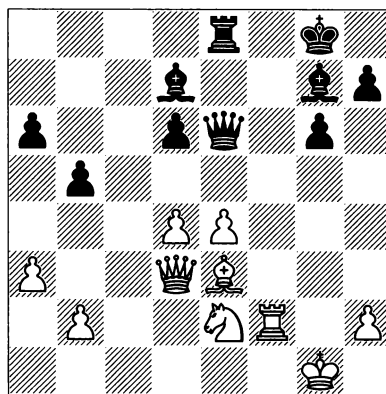
Although ultimately insufficient to change the result of the game, 41 ♠c2 puts up greater resistance.

41...♠e8! (D)

41...♜c4!? is also adequate: 42 ♜xc4+ ♠xc4 43 ♙f4 ♙h3!.

42 ♘g3

W



White has no defence any more; for example: 42 ♘c3 a5 43 b4 (43 ♘xb5 ♜xe4) 43...axb4 44 axb4 ♠c8! 45 ♘xb5 ♙xb5 46 ♜xb5 ♜g4+ 47 ♘f1 ♜xe4 -+.

42...♙c6! 0-1

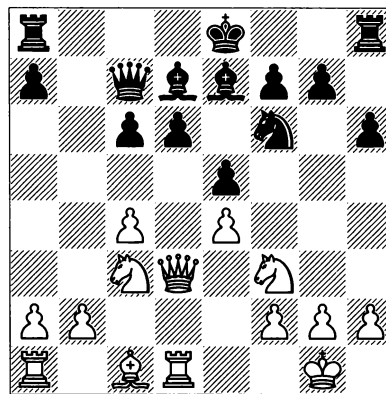
White resigned in view of 43 ♠f4 (43 d5 ♙xd5) 43...g5 44 ♠f5 ♙xe4 45 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 46 ♘xe4 ♠xe4 47 ♙xg5 ♙xd4+.

Tsiotridis – Grivas

Nikiti 1990

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 d6 4 d4 cxd4 5 ♜xd4 ♙d7 6 ♙xc6 bxc6 7 0-0 e5 8 ♜d3 ♙e7 9 c4 ♜c7 10 ♘c3 ♘f6 11 ♠d1 h6 (D)

W

**12 b3**

White's handling of the opening is too 'relaxed'. 12 b4! as in Smyslov-Grivas, Tel-Aviv 1991, is definitely better.

12...♙e6 13 h3?!

And this move is pointless. The more active 13 ♖a3!? ♠d8 14 ♖ac1 0-0 15 ♜d5!? cxd5 16 cxd5 ♗a5 17 b4 ♗b6 18 dxe6 fxe6 19 b5 ♗b7 leads to equality.

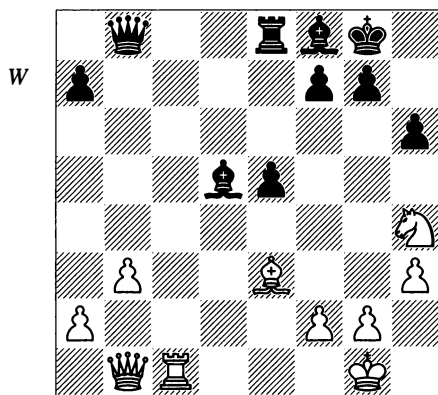
13...0-0 14 ♖e3 ♠ad8!

The correct plan. Black has obtained the bishop-pair and thus feels obliged to open up the centre by means of ...d5. To facilitate this advance, Black gathers his pieces to the centre. White's position is already inferior, mostly because he is clearly lacking in concrete plans.

15 ♖ac1 ♗b8 16 ♗b1 ♠fe8! 17 ♜h4 ♖f8 18 ♠d2

Black's play would be even easier after 18 ♜f5 ♖xf5 19 exf5 d5, with excellent control of the centre.

18...d5! 19 cxd5 cxd5 20 exd5 ♜xd5 21 ♜xd5 ♠xd5 22 ♠xd5 ♖xd5 (D)



The position has clarified, with Black having the bishop-pair in a totally open position and thus a stable advantage.

23 ♗d3

White could perhaps have tried to eliminate one of the bishops: 23 ♖c5!? ♗d8! 24 ♜f5 ♖e6 25 ♜e3 ♖xc5 26 ♠xc5 ♗d4!. Black's pieces are more active and, in a simplified position with pawns on both flanks, the advantage of bishop vs knight is especially felt. Black retains a considerable superiority.

23...♗b7! 24 ♠d1

Not 24 ♖xa7? g5!.

24...♖c6 25 ♗c4! h5!

But not 25...g5? now due to 26 ♗g4.

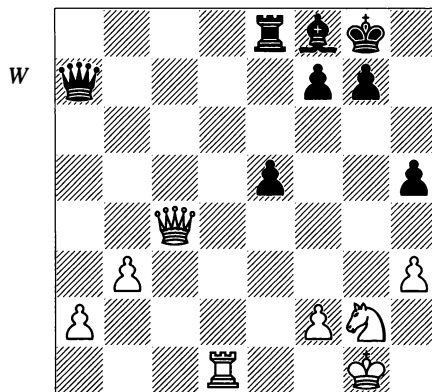
26 ♖xa7?

Again 26 ♖c5 ♗ would be preferable.

26...♖xg2!

Now White's exposed king will determine the outcome of the game. Other moves allow White good compensation for the material: 26...g5? 27 ♖e3! gxh4 28 ♗xh4 or 26...♠c8?! 27 ♖e3! ♖f3?! 28 ♗xc8! ♗xc8 29 ♜xf3.

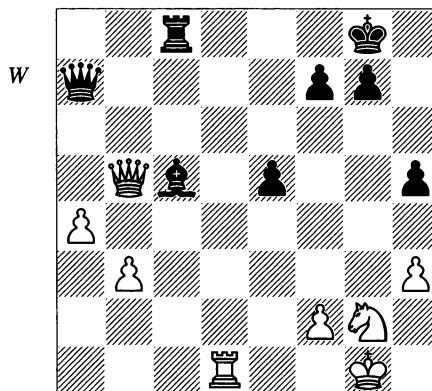
27 ♜xg2 ♗xa7 (D)



28 ♗b5 ♠c8 29 a4

Instead, 29 ♠d7? loses at once to 29...♠c1+ 30 ♜h2 ♗xf2, and after 29 ♗d7 ♗xd7 30 ♠xd7 ♠c1+ 31 ♜h2 ♖c5 32 ♠d2 (32 ♠c7 e4!) 32...e4 Black also wins without too much hassle. His immediate intention is to advance his kingside pawn-mass.

29...♖c5 (D)



30 ♗e2

30 ♠d2? ♖xf2+!.

30...♗b6! 31 ♜e3?!

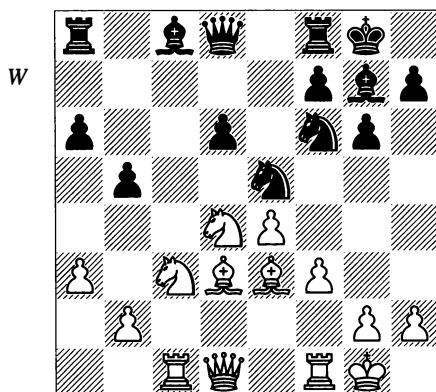
This concludes the battle. Relatively better was 31 ♖b1 ♜g6! 32 ♜d1 ♙d4! intending ...♙c3-g3. Black will surely win this position, perhaps even with a direct mating attack.

31... ♜xb3 32 ♜d7 ♜xa4 33 ♜d3 ♙xe3 34 ♜d8+ ♜xd8 35 ♜xd8+ ♙h7 36 ♜d3+ g6 37 ♜xe3 ♜f4 38 ♜c5 ♙g7 39 ♜c7 g5 40 ♜e7 g4 41 hxg4 ♜xg4+ 42 ♙f1 ♜f4 43 ♜b7 ♜c1+ 44 ♙g2 ♜g5+ 45 ♙f1 h4 46 ♜a7 ♜f4 47 ♙g2 e4 48 ♜d4+ ♙h7 49 ♜d7 ♜f3+ 50 ♙f1 h3 51 ♜e7 ♜d1# (0-1)

Kalesis – Grivas

Corfu 1991

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 a6 6 ♙e3 c6 7 ♙d3 b5 8 ♘ge2 0-0 9 0-0 ♘bd7 10 ♜c1 e5 11 a3 exd4 12 ♘xd4 ♙e5 13 cxb5 cxb5 (D)



14 ♙h1?!

After some theoretical moves in this Sämisch King's Indian, White plays a rather dubious novelty. 14 ♜f2 is better, with chances for both sides.

14... ♙b7

The tempting 14...d5?! would stumble upon 15 ♙g5! with a strong initiative.

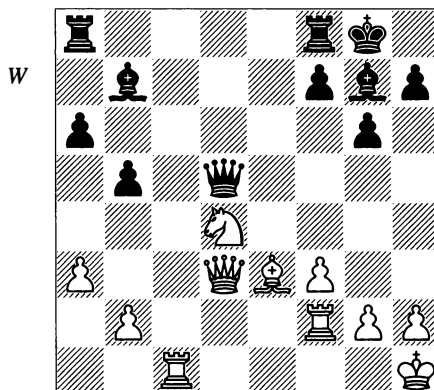
15 ♜f2?

But now this natural-looking move is a serious mistake. 15 ♙g5 had to be preferred.

15...d5! 16 exd5

White probably overlooked the tactical variation 16 ♙g5? ♘xd3 17 ♜xd3 dxe4 18 fxe4 ♘g4!.

16... ♘xd3 17 ♜xd3 ♘xd5 18 ♘xd5 ♜xd5 (D)



The dust has settled and Black enjoys an undisputed superiority, with the bishop-pair in an open position. Tactics are in the air...

19 ♜d2 ♜ac8 20 ♙e1 ♜fe8 21 ♜b1? ♜h5?

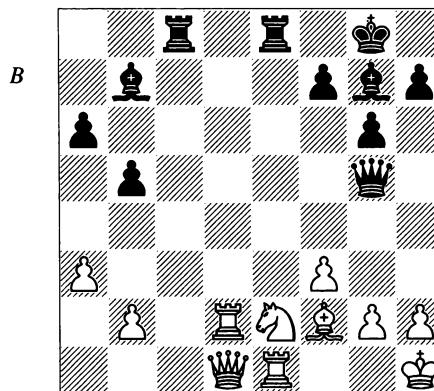
Missing that 21... ♜xe3! 22 ♜xe3 ♙xd4 works immediately, due to the loose queen on b1 and White's weak back rank: 23 ♜d1 ♙xe3! 24 ♜xd5 ♙xd5 or 23 ♜ed3 ♜f5.

22 ♜d1 ♜h4!

Threatening 23... ♜xe3 24 ♜xe3 ♙xd4.

23 ♙f2 ♜g5 24 ♙e2?! (D)

Black now converts his superiority without much effort. 24 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 25 ♙e2 offers better defensive prospects.



24... ♜cd8! 25 ♙e3 ♜h4 26 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 27 ♜c1 ♙xb2 28 ♙g5 ♜f2! 29 ♜b1 ♙e8 30 ♜d1 ♙c3 31 ♙d2 ♙xd2 32 ♜xd2 ♙d5 0-1

White resigned in view of 33 ♖g1 ♜xe2 34 ♜xd5 ♜e1 35 ♜d8+ ♔g7. A crystal-clear game, in which Black made exemplary use of his bishop-pair.

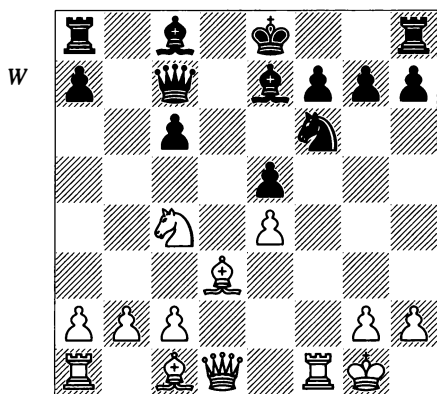
Hector – Grivas

Katerini 1992

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♜b6 5 ♘xc6 bxc6 6 ♗d3 e5 7 0-0 ♘f6 8 ♘d2 ♗e7

8...d5?! is clearly inferior: 9 exd5 cxd5 10 ♜e2!.

9 ♘c4 ♜c7 10 f4 d6 11 fxe5 dxe5 (D)



12 ♜f3

Another option is 12 ♗d2 0-0 13 ♗a5 ♜b8 14 ♗c3 ♘d7 with unclear play.

12...0-0 13 ♜g3 ♜e8! 14 ♔h1 ♘d7 15 ♗d2

And here 15 ♘e3 was a decent alternative, with a long and complicated fight ahead after 15...♘c5 16 ♗c4 ♗e6 17 ♘f5 ♗f6.

15...f6 16 ♗h6?!

White gets carried away by his aggressive style and produces this dubious move. Objectively, 16 b4!, with chances for both sides, ought to have been chosen instead.

16...♗f8 17 ♘e3 ♔h8 18 ♘f5 ♘c5

Certainly not 18...gxh6?? 19 ♗c4!.

19 ♗e3 ♘xd3 20 cxd3 ♜b7!

Once again Black has obtained the advantage of the bishop-pair, while also having fully repulsed White's initiative. With his last move he hopes to encourage White to create some targets (21 b3).

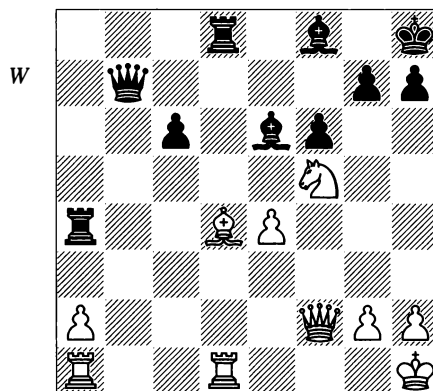
21 ♜f2 ♗d8 22 ♗f1?!

White should have satisfied himself with 22 d4 ♜.

22...♗e6 23 b3 a5! 24 d4?!

But now this comes too late. The passive 24 ♗a1 is preferable here.

24...exd4 25 ♗xd4 a4 26 bxa4 ♗xa4 (D)



Black's advantage has grown to imposing proportions, as new targets have appeared (the a2-pawn). As the threat of 27...♜d7 is now looming, White has no choice:

27 ♗c3 ♗xd1+ 28 ♗xd1 ♗xa2

Black has extracted material gain without losing any aspect of his superiority. What remains to be done is to evade possible tactical tricks that White will employ in his effort to save the game.

29 ♜d4 c5 30 ♜d8 ♗a8 31 ♜d3 ♜c6 32 e5 c4 33 ♜c2

Unfortunately for White, the tactics after 33 exf6 cxd3 34 fxg7+ ♗xg7 35 ♗xg7+ ♔g8 36 ♘e7+ ♔xg7 37 ♘xc6 ♗g4! turn out in Black's favour.

33...fxe5 34 ♗xe5 ♜c5 35 ♜e4

Here 35 ♗xg7+ would also fail: 35...♗xg7 36 ♘xg7 ♔xg7 37 ♜c3+ ♔g6!.

35...♗e8 36 ♘d4 ♗f7 37 ♘f3 ♗h5 38 ♗f1 c3 39 g4 ♗g6 40 ♜f4 c2! 41 h4 ♗d3 42 ♗e1 ♗c8 43 ♗b2 ♜f2 44 ♗c1 ♗f1 0-1

The bishop-pair dominated the position and paralysed White's pieces. The subsequent material losses were a logical consequence of Black's advantage.

Bishop against Knight

The strategic advantage of a good bishop against an inferior knight is determined by the pawn-structure. More specifically, the bishop is superior to the knight when no pawns exist in the centre but at the same time there are pawns on both flanks. It is also beneficial to the bishop if the opponent's pawns are placed on squares of the same colour as that on which it moves, since it can then attack them. Accordingly, it is preferable that fellow pawns are placed on squares of the opposite colour.

In some cases (exceptions) it is possible to demonstrate the superiority of the bishop also in positions with central pawns, provided that these pawns do not obstruct the bishop; i.e. that the bishop's own pawns are placed on squares of the opposite colour and the enemy pawns on squares of the same colour as the bishop.

The superiority of the bishop over the knight can be utilized in two main situations:

1) In the middlegame, the bishop can support an attack against the opponent's king or on any other part of the board.

2) In the endgame, the bishop – thanks to its ability to control a lot of squares from a distance – proves powerful, particularly when both sides have passed pawns. The bishop is also able to 'gain' (or 'lose') a tempo, i.e. to force the enemy knight into zugzwang; this aspect is decisive in most endgames.

In most positions that are favourable for the bishop, the possession of the prelate does not guarantee victory, but is a useful weapon in the fight for it.

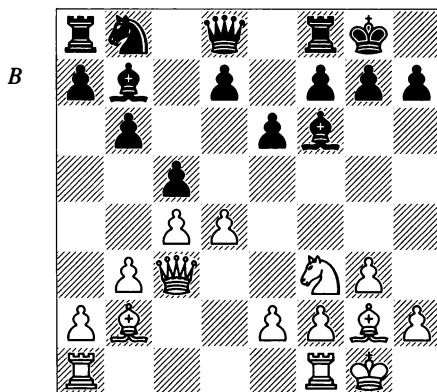
Grivas – Khetsuriani

Athens 2003

1 d4 ♟f6 2 ♟f3 e6 3 g3 b6 4 ♟g2 ♟b7 5 0-0 ♟e7 6 c4 0-0 7 ♟c3 ♟e4 8 ♟c2 ♟xc3 9 ♟xc3 c5?!

Other lines for Black are 9...f5 and 9...d6, which I prefer to the one played, as in the game his position will be solid but he will be unable to develop any kind of initiative so as to 'disturb' White.

10 b3 ♟f6 11 ♟b2 (D)



11...cxd4

White retains the advantage after 11...♟xf3 12 ♟xf3 ♟c6 13 e3! due to his bishop-pair and strong centre.

12 ♟xd4 ♟xg2 13 ♟xg2 ♟c6 14 ♟d3!

White must be careful; he would forego any advantage after the automatic 14 ♟d2 ♟xd4! 15 ♟xd4 d5!.

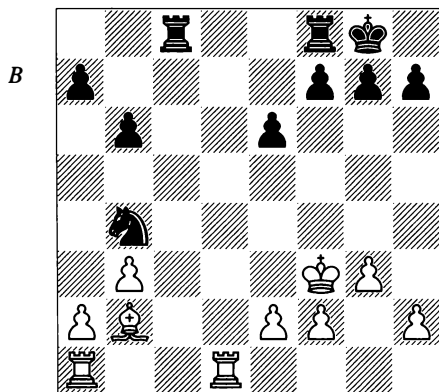
14...♟xd4 15 ♟xd4 d5

This is an attempt to improve Black's play. 15...♟xd4 16 ♟xd4 ♟c7 17 ♟fd1 gives White a slight but enduring edge, and should be compared with Grivas-Ionescu, Elista OL 1998 (analysed in Volume 2 of this series).

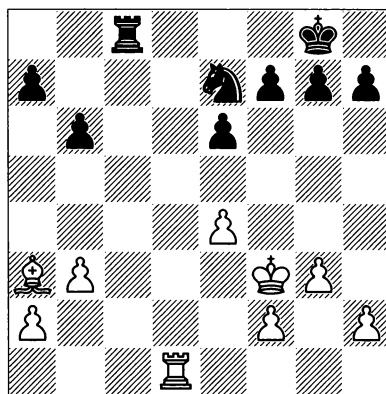
16 ♟b2! ♟c8

Black's other options, 16...dxc4 17 ♟xc4 and 16...d4 17 e3! dxe3 18 ♟xe3, also lead to a pleasant position for White, as his bishop will eventually prove its superiority over the black knight due to the fact that there are pawns on both sides.

17 cxd5! ♖b4 18 ♗f3! ♜xd5 19 ♚fd1!
 ♜xf3+ 20 ♜xf3 (D)



B



White has gladly accepted the exchanges offered by Black, ending up in a pleasant end-game where he has four basic factors on which to build:

- 1) Better minor piece (bishop vs knight), taking the pawn-structure into account.
- 2) Better-placed king (centralized), in contrast to the enemy monarch who will have difficulties in occupying a satisfactory position, either active or passive.
- 3) Possibility of a white rook invading Black's camp.
- 4) Good prospects of further improving his position, while Black can only sit and wait.

20...♜d5!?

An interesting idea. Two other moves were unsatisfactory: 20...♜c2? 21 ♙a3! a5 22 ♙xb4 axb4 23 ♜d4 with material gain, and 20...♜fd8 21 ♜ac1! ♜xa2 22 ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 23 ♜a1 ♜b4 24 ♜xa7 ±.

21 e4 ♜e7 22 ♙a3

22 ♜d7 ♜c6 23 ♜e3 (23 ♜c1?? ♜e5+!) 23...♜fd8 is interesting and similar to the game.

22...♜fe8 23 ♜ac1!

The exchange of one pair of rooks will enable the white king to breathe more freely and will further highlight the weak points of Black's position, as the remaining black pieces will have to take on greater defensive duties. Naturally, 23 ♜d7?! ♜c6! 24 ♜e3 ♜e5! would only help Black.

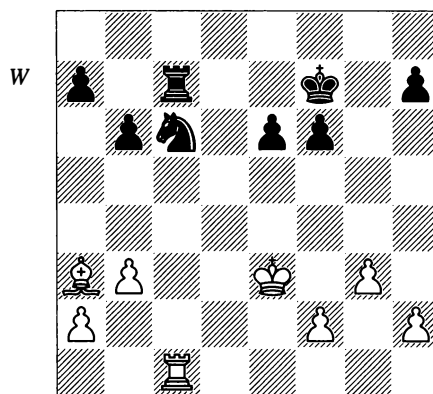
23...♜xc1 24 ♜xc1 ♜c8 25 ♜d1! (D)

The exchange of rooks would now be in Black's favour, as then White would surrender one of his aforementioned advantages, the possibility of invading Black's lines with his rook.

25...♜c6 26 ♜e3 ♜c7 27 e5!

An apparently illogical move, placing the pawn on a square of the same colour as the bishop. However, this move essentially prevents the activation of the black king, who now cannot approach the centre unless Black decides to accept further pawn weaknesses. If Black waits passively then White will continue with f4, g4, ♜d6, ♜e4 and f5, gaining even more space and developing substantial pressure on Black's position.

27...f5 28 exf6 gxf6 29 ♜c1 ♜f7 (D)



30 ♜c4!

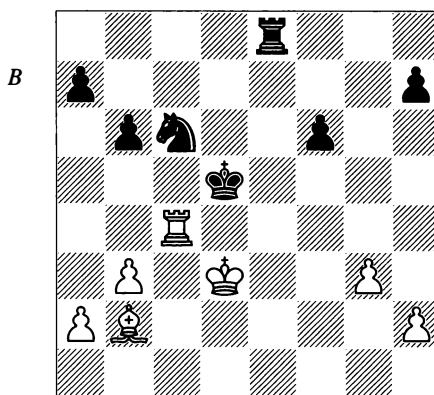
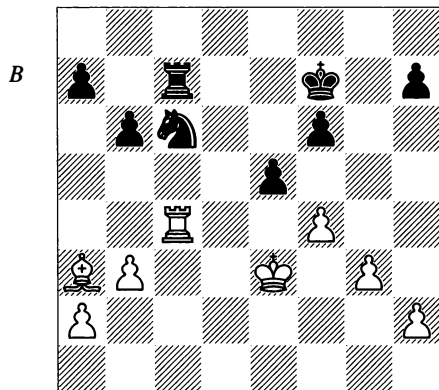
Now the white rook can swing to either side of the board. Working together with the strong bishop, it will create multiple problems for

Black. The black king has improved its placement but Black's pawn-structure has deteriorated with the emergence of weak pawns.

30...e5?!

Black should have stayed passive, without exposing himself with pointless pawn moves that, although seemingly strong, actually create new targets.

31 f4! (D)



is more than obvious and Black's chances of survival minimal.

39 ♖h4 a5 40 a3! ♜e5+ 41 ♙xe5 fxe5 42 ♜xh7 ♜f6 43 ♜e3 ♜c6 44 ♜d7+!

The game is practically over as White has won material and is able to protect his position.

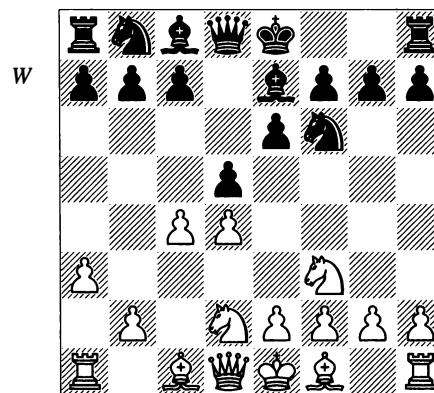
44...♜e6 45 ♜d3 ♜f5 46 h3 ♜h6 47 g4+ ♜e6 48 ♜e4 ♜f6 49 ♜f3 1-0

Grivas – Loginov

Budapest 1993

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜f3 ♙b4+ 4 ♜bd2 d5 5 a3 ♙e7 (D)

Alternatively, Black could play 5...♙xd2+, allowing White a slight edge due to the bishop-pair but retaining a very solid, though perhaps passive, position.



With the idea of isolating one more black pawn (apart from h7) on e5 or f6. Black wisely opts for the latter since if he were left with a pawn on e5 then all pawn endings would be lost, due to the possibility of White creating an outside passed pawn.

31...exf4+ 32 ♙xf4 ♜e6 33 ♙b2 ♜c8 34 ♙a3 ♜c7 35 ♜e4 ♜c8 36 ♜e3

White has played some waiting moves to gain time and now prepares to increase the pressure with ♜h4-h6 and ♙b2. After the black pieces are tied to the protection of the kingside pawns, the white king will invade the queenside. A simple plan, but one that is very difficult for Black to oppose.

36...♜d5 37 ♙b2 ♜e8+ 38 ♜d3 (D)

38...♜e6?

Black's position was difficult, but with this move he loses material. He should objectively have preferred the passive 38...♜f8 39 ♜h4 ♜f7 40 a3 ♜e5+ 41 ♜e3 with advantage for White. It must be noted that Black cannot play 38...♜e5+? 39 ♙xe5 ♜xe5 (39...fxe5 40 ♜c7 e4+ 41 ♜e3) 40 ♜c7 ♜h5 41 h4 a5 42 ♜b7 ♜c6 43 ♜f7 ♜h6 44 ♜e4, when White's superiority

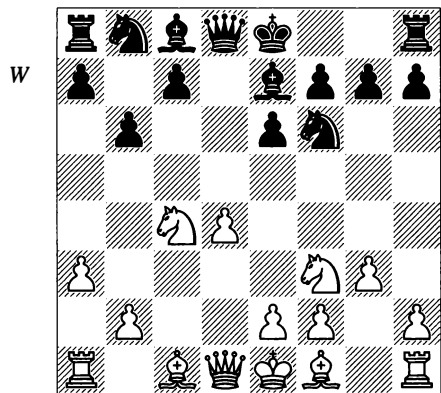
White has also tried 6 ♖c2 ♜bd7 (6...0-0 7 g3 a5 8 ♗g2 ♜c6 9 0-0 dxc4 10 ♖xc4 a4 11 ♜d1 ♗d7 12 ♖d3 h6 13 ♜c4 ± Grivas-Aggelis, Katerini 1993) 7 e4 dxe4 8 ♜xe4 0-0 (8...c5 9 ♜xf6+ ♗xf6 10 ♗e3 ♖c7 11 0-0-0 cxd4 12 ♜xd4 a6 13 g4 gives White the initiative, Grivas-Hobusch, Dortmund 1991) 9 ♗d3! (9 ♜c3 b6 10 ♗e2 ♗b7 11 ♗f4 c5 12 d5 is unclear, Grivas-Ivanović, Egio 1986) 9...♜xe4 10 ♗xe4 ♜f6 11 ♗d3 b6 12 ♗g5 h6 13 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 14 0-0-0 ♗b7 15 ♗h7+ ♗h8 16 ♗e4 ♖c8 17 h4 ± Grivas-Georgiou, Limassol 1997.

6...dxc4?!

This move suits White as his knight occupies a more central post. Better is 6...0-0 7 ♗g2 ♜bd7 8 b4 a5 9 b5 c5 10 bxc6 bxc6 11 0-0 ♗a6 12 ♖c2 ♜c8, Grivas-Mastrokoulos, Iraklion 1994. Black can also try 6...b6 or 6...c6.

7 ♜xc4 b6 (D)

The premature opening of the position after 7...c5?! 8 ♗g5! would favour White. 7...b5!? 8 ♜ce5 ♗b7 is interesting.



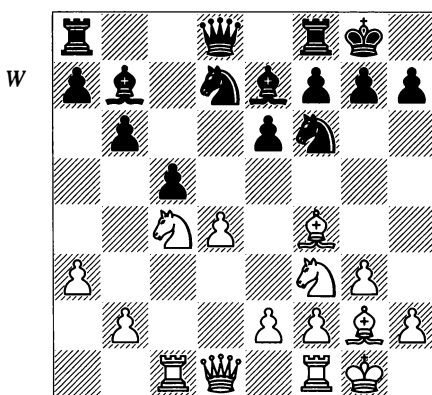
8 ♗g2 ♗b7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗f4 ♜bd7 11 ♜c1!?

White has completed his development and retains a slight edge thanks to his greater control of space. He can also retain a similar edge by 11 b4 c5 12 dxc5 bxc5 13 b5, thanks to his superior pawn-structure.

11...c5 (D)

12 ♗e1!

A difficult move, threatening 13 ♜d6 ♗d5 14 e4. The immediate 12 ♜d6?! ♗d5 13 ♜b5 ♗c6! doesn't offer much. Black has many problems



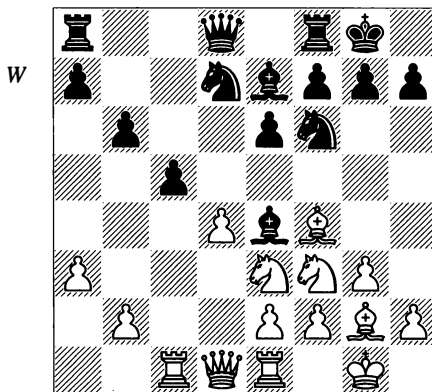
to solve, and is in danger of asphyxiating on his back two ranks.

12...♗d5!?

An interesting idea, preventing 13 ♜d6?? in view of 13...♜h5!. Instead after 12...cxd4? 13 ♜xd4 ♗xg2 14 ♖xg2 White will occupy the outpost on c6, increasing his advantage.

13 ♜e3! ♗e4 (D)

Compulsory, as after 13...cxd4? 14 ♗c7! ♖e8 15 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 16 ♜xd4 or 13...♗b7? 14 dxc5 ♜xc5 15 b4 ♜ce4 16 ♜c7 White is clearly on top.



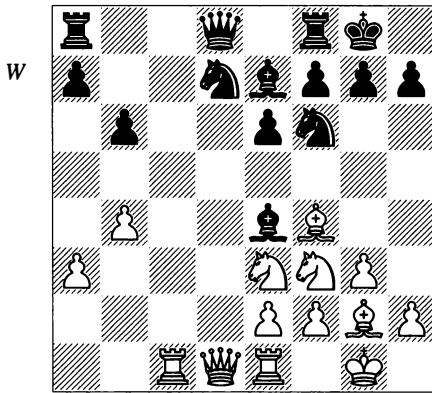
14 dxc5 ♜xc5!?

Although apparently unpleasant, the slightly worse position after 14...bxc5 had to be accepted.

15 b4 ♜cd7 (D)

15...♖xd1 is bad: 16 ♜exd1 ♜cd7 17 ♜c7 and White is much better.

16 ♗c7!



White's superiority is growing, as the black pieces have failed to find decent posts.

16...♖e8 17 ♘c4 ♗h8

Visually displeasing but compulsory!

18 ♘d6 ♗xd6 19 ♗xd6 ♖g8 20 ♗d4

White's advantage is unquestionable. He commands more space and has the bishop-pair, but things are not simple as Black has no static weaknesses.

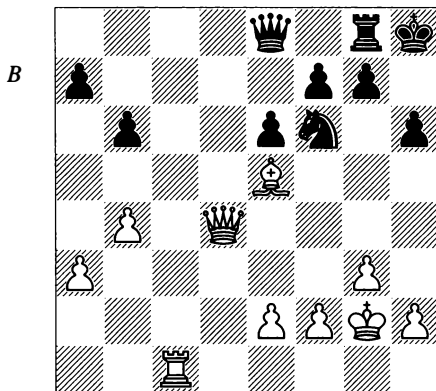
20...h6

White would retain his plus after 20...♞c8 21 ♞xc8 ♗xc8 22 ♘e5! as well.

21 ♞ed1?!

Time-pressure! 21 ♘e5 is enough to retain a clear advantage.

21...♞c8 22 ♘e5 ♞xc1 23 ♞xc1 ♗xg2 24 ♗xg2 ♘xe5 25 ♗xe5 (D)



White remains on top as his bishop is a better minor piece than the black knight. The power of the white bishop becomes evident both in the

middlegame, where it assists White's attacking play, and in the endgame, where the pawn-structure favours the bishop.

25...♗a8+ 26 ♖g1 ♘d5?!

Time-pressure provokes a mistake from Black. 26...♞d8? 27 ♗f4! and 26...♘e4? 27 f3 f6 28 ♗xe4 are clearly unsatisfactory for Black, but 26...♘h7! 27 b5! f6 28 ♗d6 would somewhat diminish Black's inferiority.

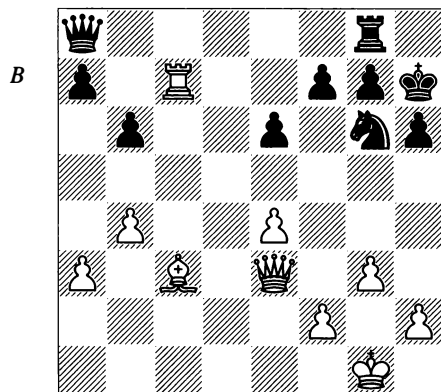
27 e4!

White grabs his chance, creating insoluble problems for Black.

27...♘e7

27...f6 28 exd5 (28 ♗d6 ♞d8) 28...fxe5 29 ♗xe5 ♗xd5 (29...exd5 30 ♞c7) 30 ♗xd5 exd5 31 ♞c7 leads to a lost endgame for Black.

28 ♗e3! ♗h7 29 ♞c7 ♘g6 30 ♗c3 (D)



The white pieces cooperate harmoniously, all of them occupying better positions than their black counterparts.

30...♞c8

An attempt to complicate the position, as 30...♞f8 31 h4! offers Black no hope.

31 ♞xf7 e5 32 h4! ♗g8 33 ♞f5 ♞c4 34 h5! ♞xe4 35 ♗d3 ♘h4?!

Naturally, after 35...♘e7 36 ♞xe5 ♞xe5 37 ♗xe5 White wins easily. Black preferred to commit suicide rather than suffer a slow but certain death in the endgame.

36 gxh4 ♖g4+ 37 ♖f1 ♗h1+ 38 ♖e2 ♞e4+ 39 ♖d2 ♞e1 40 ♖c2 ♗c6 41 ♖b2 ♗e6 42 ♗d8+ ♗h7 43 ♞f8 1-0

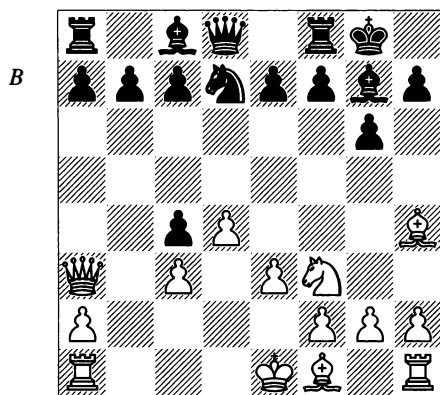
After 43...♞e2+ 44 ♖c1 Black has no defence against mate.

Grivas – Avrukh*Iraklion 1995*

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 d5 4 ♘f3 ♙g7 5 ♙g5
 ♘e4 6 ♙h4 ♘xc3 7 bxc3 dxc4 8 ♖a4+ ♘d7

An old, passive continuation. The 'correct' 8...♖d7 occurred in Grivas-Colović, Budapest 2001 and Grivas-Vakhidov, Khania 2000, both analysed in Volume 2 of this series.

9 e3! 0-0 10 ♖a3! (D)



10...♙f6!?

An interesting theoretical novelty. The common line 10...c5 11 ♙xc4 ♖c7 12 ♙c1 e5!? (12...e6!? 13 0-0 ± Nilssen-B.Lalić, Copenhagen 1989) 13 0-0 ♘b6 14 ♙e2 ♙g4 15 h3 ♙xf3 16 ♙xf3 ♙fc8 17 ♙fd1 (1/2-1/2 Kazilaris-Smyslov, Siegen OL 1970) leads to an advantage for White.

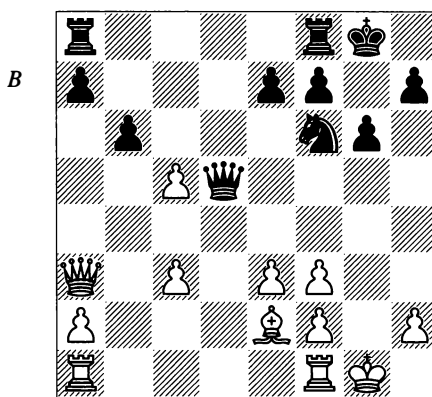
11 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 12 ♙xc4 b6 13 0-0 ♙b7 14 ♙a6!?

White could also retain a slight plus with 14 ♙e2 but preferred a more direct move, assuming that Black would opt for the exchange of bishops.

14...♙xf3!?

Accepting the challenge, but I believe that 14...♙xa6 15 ♖xa6 (when White plans a4-a5) is preferable. With the text-move Black weakens the white king, but he is unable to exploit this. At the same time, he leaves White with the superior minor piece; although this fact cannot immediately be exploited, it bodes well for the future.

15 gxf3 ♖d5 16 ♙e2 c5 17 dxc5 (D)



17...♖xc5?

A serious mistake, leading to an inferior ending. The queen exchange can only favour White, as it is now impossible for Black to harass the white king. Consequently, Black surrenders the only counterbalancing factor for giving up his bishop for the white knight and will end up in a worse position. 17...bxc5 was essential.

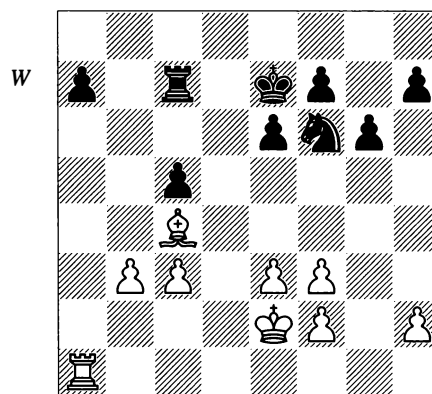
18 ♖xc5 bxc5 19 ♙ab1! ♙ab8 20 ♙fd1 e6 21 ♙c4

The threatened 21...♘d5 had to be prevented.

21...♙g7 22 ♙b3! ♙xb3?!

This was not urgently needed. Black should play 22...♙b6!? with a slightly worse position.

23 axb3 ♙c8 24 ♙f1 ♙f8 25 ♙a1 ♙c7 26 ♙e2 ♙e7 (D)



White's position is better. He has bishop against knight (with an accordingly favourable pawn-structure) and the black pawns are either

weak (a7 and c5) or placed on the same colour squares as the white bishop. The doubled white f-pawns cannot be considered weak as Black has no way of attacking them, while they offer good control of the centre. The structure in the diagram strongly reminds one of the classic game Najdorf-Ståhlberg, Zurich Ct 1953, where, although Black's pawn-structure was better than it is here, he didn't manage to avoid defeat: 1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♞c3 d5 4 ♟g5 ♟e7 5 e3 ♞bd7 6 ♞f3 0-0 7 ♞c1 c6 8 ♟d3 dxc4 9 ♟xc4 ♞d5 10 ♟xe7 ♞xe7 11 ♞e4 e5 12 0-0 exd4 13 ♞xd4 ♞7b6 14 ♟b3 ♟g4 15 ♞g3 ♟xf3 16 gxf3 ♞f6 17 ♞xf6 ♞xf6 18 ♞f5 ♟ad8 19 ♟fd1 ♞c8 20 ♟f1 ♟fe8 21 ♟e2 ♟f8 22 ♟xd8 ♟xd8 23 ♟g1 ♞e8 24 ♟g4 ♞e7 25 ♞xe7 ♟xe7 26 ♟e4+ ♟f8 27 ♟a4 a6 28 ♟f4 f6 29 ♟h4 h6 30 ♟h5 ♞c7 31 f4 ♟e7 32 ♟c5 ♟d6 33 ♞c1 b6 34 f5 c5 35 f4 ♟c6 36 a4 b5 37 ♟c2 ♞e8 38 ♟e4 ♞c7 39 ♟d5 c4 40 e4 ♞d6 41 axb5 axb5 42 ♟e3 ♟a7 43 ♟g1 ♟f8 44 ♟d4 ♞c7 45 ♞c1 ♞b7 46 ♟a1 ♞c5 47 ♟a8+ ♟e7 48 e5 ♞b3+ 49 ♟c3 ♞c1 50 ♟g8 ♞e2+ 51 ♟d2 ♞xf4 52 ♟xg7+ ♟d8 53 exf6 ♟d7 54 ♟xd7+ ♟xd7 55 ♟c6+ 1-0. What is certain is that Black has a difficult task ahead as, beyond his defensive duties to which he must pay constant attention, he can never generate any real threats. But what can White's plan be to increase his superiority? Pawn-breaks on both flanks, aiming to facilitate the invasion by the white rook into Black's camp and at the same time to increase the scope of his bishop. Subsequently, the invasion by the white king will be decisive. It seems easy, but heightened attention and good feeling for the critical moment are required.

27 ♟d2 ♞d7 28 ♟c2 ♞b6 29 ♟e2 ♟d6 30 f4 ♟e7 31 h4! ♟d6

After 31...h5 White will prepare a break with f5 (e4 and f5), creating a target on g6.

32 h5 ♟e7 33 ♟f3 ♟d6 34 c4! (D)

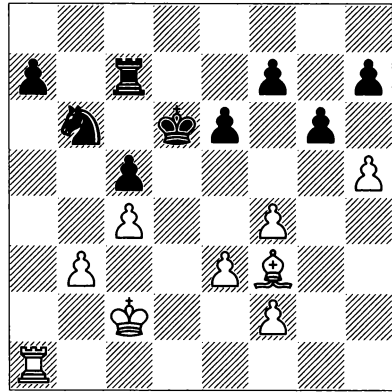
Control of the centre is important, while the c4-pawn later becomes a passed pawn candidate with the help of the b4 break.

34...♟e7 35 ♟c3 ♟d6 36 ♟e2 gxf3?!

This weakens Black's pawn-structure, but he couldn't stand staying passive any longer. 36...♟e7 was a natural move.

37 ♟h1 f5 38 ♟xh5 ♟g7 39 b4!

B



Yet another pawn-break, aiming to turn c4 into a passed pawn.

39...♟b7

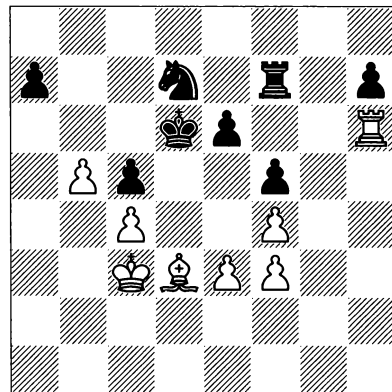
After 39...cxb4+ 40 ♟xb4 ♞d7 41 ♟f3 ♞c5 42 ♟h1! Black faces serious problems (42...♞d3+ 43 ♟b5!) as the white passed pawn proves powerful.

40 b5!

Forced, as 40 bxc5+? ♟xc5, threatening 41...♞a4+, would be good for Black. White 'forgets' about the plan of utilizing the passed c-pawn but in return fixes the backward weak a7-pawn. His superiority is increasing.

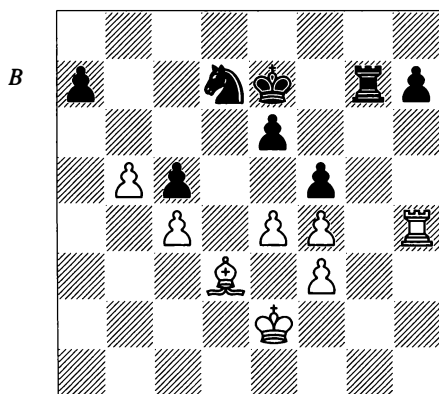
40...♟g7 41 ♟d3 ♞d7 42 ♟h6 ♟f7 43 f3! (D)

B



Preparing White's next break, the e4 advance. The relocation of the white king to its rightful flank is part of these preparations.

43...♟e7 44 ♟h1 ♞b6 45 ♟h4 ♞d7 46 ♟h2 ♞b6 47 ♟d2 ♞d7 48 ♟e2 ♟f8 49 ♟h6 ♟e7 50 ♟h1 ♞b6 51 ♟h5 ♞d7 52 ♟h4 ♟g7 53 e4 (D)



After several essentially useless moves (intending to 'test' Black's nerves) White proceeds with his plan.

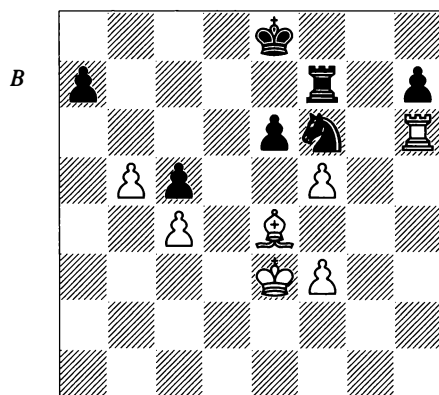
53...fxe4 54 ♖xe4!

Excellent and at the same time logical. After 54 fxe4? e5! the d3-bishop would be nothing more than a big fat pawn. White aims to exchange his f-pawn for Black's e-pawn so as to obtain a passed pawn; this pawn will be much stronger than Black's on the h-file and, in conjunction with the bishop and the king, will lead White to victory. Black can offer no resistance.

54...♟f6 55 ♜f2 ♟d8

After 55...♟xe4+ 56 fxe4 ♟d6 57 ♖h6 ♜e7 58 ♜f3 ♜f7 59 f5 exf5 60 exf5 the threats of 61 ♖c6, 61 ♖a6 and 61 ♜e4 followed by ♟d5 would be decisive.

56 ♖h6 ♜f7 57 ♜e3 ♜e8 58 f5! (D)

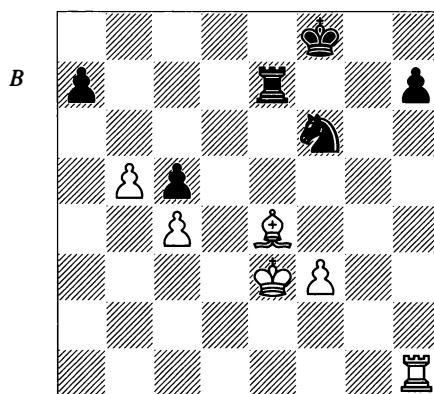


The last breakthrough, clearing White's path to victory.

58...exf5

58...♟xe4? 59 ♖xe6+! is easy for White, but Black could have tried 58...e5, when after 59 ♖h4! ♜e7 60 ♖c6, intending 61 f4, White retains his advantage.

59 ♖xf5 ♜e7 60 ♖d3 ♜f8 61 ♖h1 ♖e7+ 62 ♜f2 ♖d7 63 ♜e3 ♖e7+ 64 ♖e4! (D)



64...♖c7

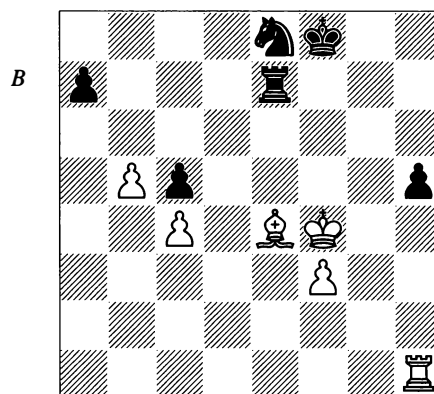
Also after 64...♟xe4 65 fxe4 White's threats (66 ♖h5 and 66 ♜f4) are powerful. If, however, the b-pawn were still on b3, Black would have counterplay with 65...♖b7!. Here the significance of White's b4-b5 advance becomes clear.

65 ♜f4 h5 66 ♜f5 ♜f7 67 ♜e6

The white king proves exceptionally strong and completes the plan laid out in the note to Black's 26th move.

67...♜e8 68 ♜e5 ♖e7+ 69 ♜f4 (D)

69 ♜d5 was also winning, but White can even afford the luxury of the text-move.



69...♖g7 70 ♔d5 ♜c7 71 ♖e5

Black is now completely lost as the d5-bishop is clearly stronger than the g7-knight, the white king is dominant and the white rook is also better placed than its counterpart. Finally, the white f-pawn will advance comfortably while the black h-pawn is immobilized. All these factors contribute to White's decisive advantage.

71...♖e7 72 f4 ♜c8 73 ♖a1 ♜c7 74 f5 ♜e8 75 ♖a6 ♖f8 76 ♖h6 ♜e7+ 77 ♔e6 ♖g7 78 ♖xh5 ♜c7 79 ♖g5+ ♖h6 80 ♖g8 ♖g7 81 ♖f6 1-0

Grivas – I. Nikolaidis

Rapidplay, Panormo 2001

1 d4 d6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 c4 ♔g7 4 ♖c3 ♔g4

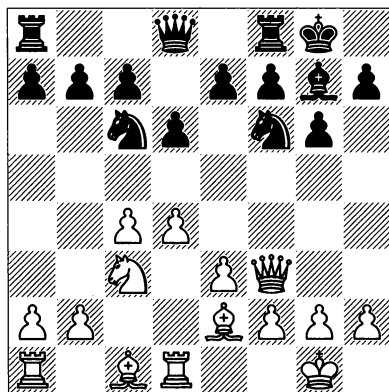
An original treatment of the opening by the strong Greek GM, with deep positional foundations.

5 e3!? ♜xf3

After the immediate 5...♖c6 6 ♔e2! the threat of 7 d5 is strong.

6 ♜xf3 ♖c6 7 ♔e2 ♖f6 8 0-0-0 9 ♖d1 (D)

B



White has obtained the bishop-pair. While it doesn't play a significant role in this closed position, it remains a useful weapon for the future.

9...♖d7 10 ♔f1 a5 11 ♜e2 e5 12 dxe5! ♖xe5

12...dxe5?! 13 b3! would leave Black without a plan, as he would soon have to surrender his central strongpoints.

13 e4 ♖c5 14 ♔e3 ♜c8 15 f3 ♜e8 16 ♜f2

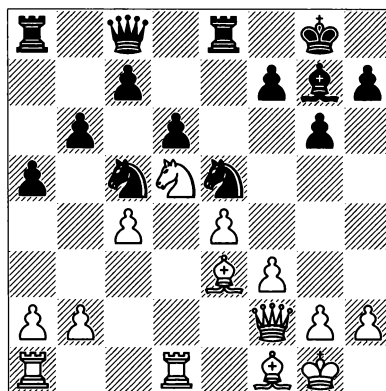
White stands better as he commands more space and has the two bishops. Black is aiming

for the ...f5 break, by which he hopes to obtain counterplay, while he also enjoys two good, centralized knights.

16...b6 17 ♖d5?! (D)

Despite the fact that the white knight conquers a central square, 17 ♖b5!, intending ♖ab1, b3, a3 and b4, is better.

B



17...♖c6! 18 ♖d2 ♖b4! 19 ♔d4

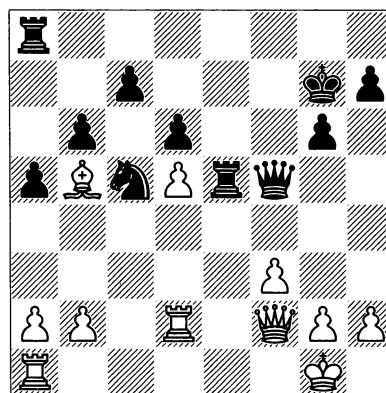
After his error, White is forced to exchange the powerful g7-bishop as well, as he is unable to employ the aforementioned plan.

19...♖xd5 20 ♔xg7 ♖xg7 21 cxd5

The strong c5-knight keeps Black in the game as, apart from its excellent placement, it defends the backward c7-pawn. Naturally, Black must react promptly as otherwise White's plan (♖ab1, b3, a3 and b4) would be decisive.

21...f5! 22 ♔b5 ♜e5 23 exf5 ♜xf5 (D)

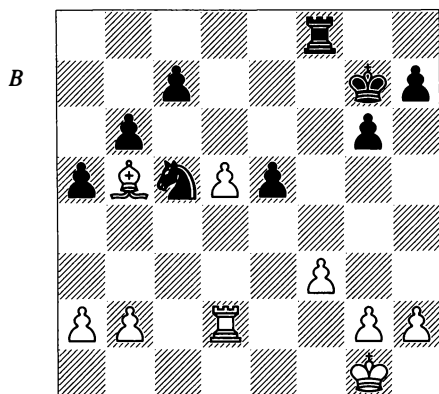
W



24 ♜e1 ♜f8?!

24...♖xe1+ 25 ♔xe1 ♜f8 is better, with equal chances in a drawish position.

25 ♔d4! ♜f4 26 ♜xe5 ♔xd4+ 27 ♜xd4 dxe5 28 ♜d2 (D)



White possesses a theoretically superior minor piece (bishop vs knight) while his pawn-structure also looks healthier. We would be able to say that his chances are better if Black were to continue mechanically with 28...♟b7 29 ♜c2 ♜f7 30 ♜d3 ♟d6 31 ♜e2 ♜e7 32 ♟f2. However, Black realizes the problems of the position and reacts correctly, trying to rid himself of his worst pawn.

28...e4! 29 d6!?

After 29 fxe4 ♟xe4 30 ♜c2 ♜f7 31 ♜d3 ♟d6 the position would be drawn, as neither side can improve their pieces.

29...cxd6

29...e3? 30 ♜e2 cxd6 31 ♜xe3 grants White a clear superiority due to his better pawn-structure and minor piece.

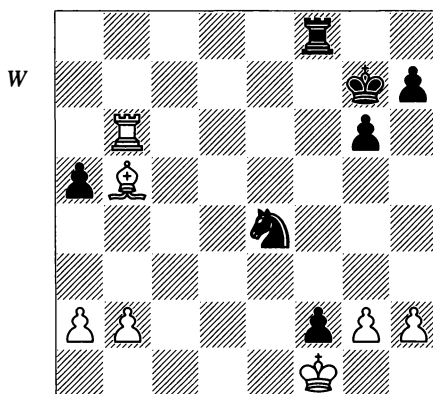
30 ♜xd6 exf3?

A decisive mistake by Black, who wrongly placed his faith in the power of his f-pawn. After 30...♜f6! the game would be within the boundaries of the draw, thanks to the good placement the black king can achieve after 31 ♜xf6 ♟xf6 32 ♟f2 ♟e5 33 ♟e3 exf3 34 gxf3.

31 ♜xb6 f2+

In case of 31...fxg2 32 ♟xg2 the power of the white bishop would become obvious; in conjunction with the mobile 2:1 pawn-majority on the queenside it would suffice, slowly but steadily, to bring victory.

32 ♟f1 ♟e4 (D)



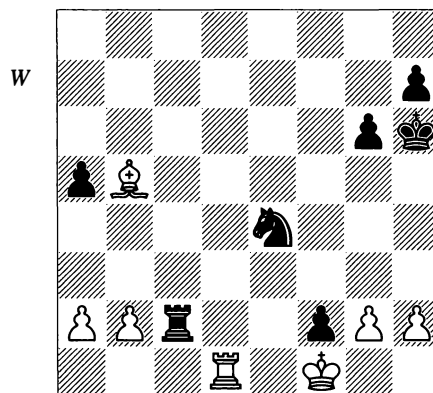
33 ♜b7+! ♟h6 34 ♜d7

Now White threatens ♜d1 and ♜d3 kicking away the black knight, when he wins the f2-pawn by means of either ♜e2-f3 or ♜d2xf2. Naturally, the possibilities are multiple and White must display great accuracy, but in all the possible lines the superiority of the bishop over the knight is obvious.

34...♜c8?

A serious error. Black should have included the moves 34...♜b8 35 a4, so that the black knight can escape via the b3-square.

35 ♜d1 ♜c2?! (D)



Black continues his mistaken plan. He should have come to terms with the loss of his f2-pawn and prepared to struggle on in the resulting ending.

36 ♜d3 ♟d2+ 37 ♟xf2 ♜xb2 38 ♟e3!

The black knight has been trapped in the web of the white bishop and is now lost. If Black had played as in the comment to his 34th move he would now have 39...♖b3, although even in that case after 40 ♖b1! ♖xb1 41 ♗xb1 his position remains difficult, especially in view of the better-placed white king, who can quickly attack the black a5-pawn.

38...♗xa2 39 ♗xd2 ♗a3 40 ♖f4 ♖b3 41 ♖e4 a4 42 ♗d7 ♖b4 43 h4 1-0

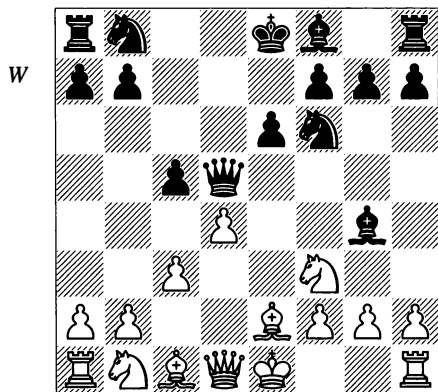
Gurieli – Grivas

Komotini 1992

1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 exd5 ♖xd5 4 d4 ♖f6 5 ♖f3 ♗g4 6 ♖e2

White has also tried 6 ♖a4+!? ♖d7 7 ♖b3 cxd4 8 ♖xd4 ♖c6 9 ♖e3; e.g., 9...♖xd4 10 ♖xd4 e6 11 ♖d2 ♖c6 12 0-0-0 ♖xb3 13 ♖xb3 a5 14 f3 ♖e7 15 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 16 ♖d4 ♖xd4 17 ♗xd4 1/2-1/2 Makropoulos-Grivas, Serres 1990, but 9...♖a5 is regarded as strong.

6...e6 (D)



7 0-0

7 h3 ♖h5 8 ♖a3 a6!? 9 ♖c2 ♖bd7 10 0-0 ♖e7 11 ♖e1 0-0 12 c4 ♖d6 13 ♖e3 ♖c7 14 a3 ♖fd8 15 ♖c1 cxd4 16 ♖cxd4 ♖c5 17 ♖f4 ♖d6 18 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 was unclear in Makropoulos-Grivas, Athens 1994.

7...♖c6

With the inclusion of the moves 7 h3 ♖h5, after 8...♖e7?! 9 c4! ♖d8 10 ♖c3 cxd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 12 ♖xd4 ♖xe2 13 ♖dxe2 a6 14 ♖d1 ♖bd7 15 ♖f4 ♖c8 16 b3 h6 17 ♖f1 ♖b4

18 ♖ac1 White had a slight advantage in Blauert-Grivas, Dortmund 1992.

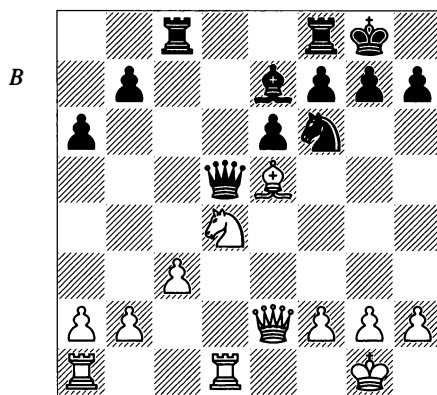
8 ♖a3

Again with the inclusion of 8 h3 ♖h5, 9 ♖e3 cxd4 10 cxd4 ♖e7 11 ♖c3 ♖d6 12 ♖b3 0-0 13 a3 ♖ac8 14 ♖fd1 ♖fd8 15 ♖ac1 ♖b8 16 d5 exd5 led to a draw in Borsos-Grivas, Dortmund 1990.

8...cxd4 9 ♖b5 ♖c8 10 ♖bxd4 ♖xd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖xe2 12 ♖xe2 ♖e7 13 ♖d1 a6 14 ♖f4

With 8 h3 ♖h5 in, 15 a4?! proved inferior in Makropoulos-Grivas, Athens 1992. I think that 14 ♖b3 ♖c6 15 ♖e3 would better meet the requirements of the position.

14...0-0 15 ♖e5 (D)



15...♖c5

To defend against White's threat of 16 ♖f5!.

Black has successfully completed his development and comfortably equalized. That is perhaps the most significant disadvantage of the opening plan chosen by White.

16 a4?!

An erroneous plan, weakening the queenside. White should instead double rooks on the d-file, maintaining equality.

16...♖fd8 17 a5 ♖d5! 18 ♖g3?!

White's only chance was 18 ♖f3 ♖xd1+ 19 ♖xd1 ♖d8, when Black seems to have the better chances.

18...♖h5!

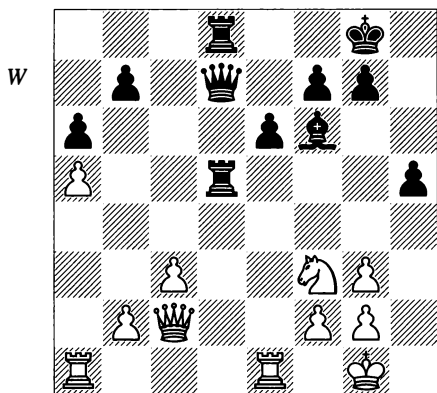
Now Black remains with a superior minor piece (bishop vs knight), as the pawn-structure favours the bishop. In particular, the white queenside pawns are very weak, especially as

they are placed on squares of the same colour as the bishop and will come under attack.

19 ♖b3 ♜xg3 20 hxg3 ♖b5! 21 ♖c2

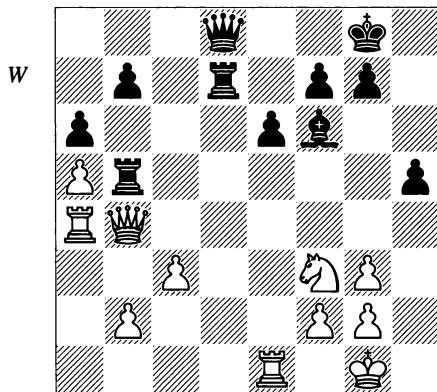
Forced, as after 21 ♖xb5?? ♜xb5 White's position crumbles.

21...♜cd8 22 ♜d4 ♖d7 23 ♜e1 ♜f6 24 ♜f3 h5! (D)



Black has the advantage due to two major characteristics of the position. First, he has a good bishop against a bad knight, since the pawn-structure favours the bishop in this particular case. Moreover, almost all the white pawns are placed on dark squares, like the black bishop, and thus constitute targets. Secondly, Black controls the very important open d-file.

25 ♖e4 ♖c7! 26 ♜a4 ♜d7 27 ♖f4 ♖d8 28 ♖b4 ♜b5! (D)



29 ♖a3

Black has forced the white queen and rook into passive positions, tying them to the defence of the weak a-pawn that White himself created. Now all that remains is the decisive blow.

29...♜d1! 30 ♜xd1 ♖xd1+ 31 ♜h2 ♖c2!

Black must avoid the alluring 31...♜xc3? 32 bxc3 ♜b1, since after 33 g4! he has nothing.

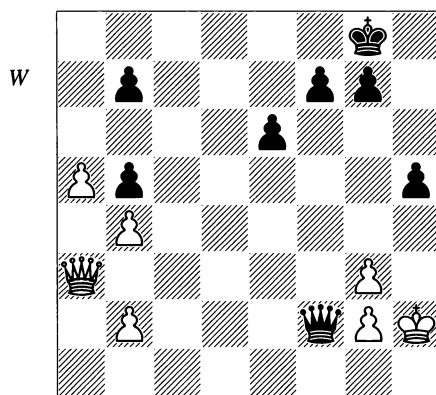
32 ♜b4 ♜e7 33 ♜d4 ♜xb4?

The immediate 33...♜xf2! wins; for example, 34 ♜xb5 h4! 35 gxh4 axb5 36 ♖a1 ♜xb4 37 cxb4 ♖xh4+ 38 ♜g1 ♖xb4.

34 cxb4 ♖xf2?

Despite the fact that Black now wins a pawn, 34...♖c4 35 ♜xb5 ♖xb5 is better. Then he has excellent winning chances due to his kingside majority.

35 ♜xb5 axb5 (D)



Black has won a pawn but he had not evaluated the resulting position correctly, as White now has counterplay against the weak black queenside pawns.

36 ♖d3! ♖f5 37 ♖d7! ♖d5 38 ♖e8+ ♜h7 39 ♖xf7

The remaining black pawns are weak and the black king exposed. Black's winning chances have vanished – a sad end to an interesting game.

39...♜h6 40 ♖f4+ ♜g6 41 ♖b8 ♜f7 42 ♖f4+ ♜g6 43 ♖b8 1/2-1/2

Black treated the opening with erudition and the middlegame with imagination, but failed to make good use of his advantage. He became careless and was punished by the unwritten law of chess (and not only chess).

Knight against Bishop

Just like the previous strategic element examined (bishop against knight), the concept of good knight against bad bishop is based upon the two sides' pawn-structures.

The presence of central pawns (especially when they are placed on the same colour squares as the bishop) generally favours the knight, as it decreases the scope of the bishop. When, moreover, the pawn-structure is relatively fixed and strong (weak) squares exist, the superiority of the knight increases, since (as we explained in Volume 1 of this series) the knight is a more suitable piece for the occupation of outposts.

The knight is a very flexible piece that can move to any square of the board, but the control it exerts is restricted to only a few squares at a time. Consequently, a closed centre or the presence of pawns on only one side of the board significantly favours the knight and makes it preferable to the bishop, as the latter does have a greater radius of action but is confined to only half the squares of the chess-board. In view of the above we may define the superiority of the knight over the bishop as a consequence of the pawn-structure and especially when the centre is closed, when there is a fixed structure (on squares of the colour of the bishop) or when there are pawns only on one wing.

Although the knight's superiority usually becomes evident in the endgame, there are many examples that display this superiority in the middlegame as well (always under the conditions mentioned above). The secret to determining which of the minor pieces is superior is *the overall examination of the pawn-structure*.

Grivas – Smirin
Tel-Aviv 1991

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♞c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 h3 0-0 6 ♙e3 c6 7 ♞d3 ♞bd7

Black can opt for a different set-up with 7...e5.

8 ♞ge2 c5!? 9 0-0

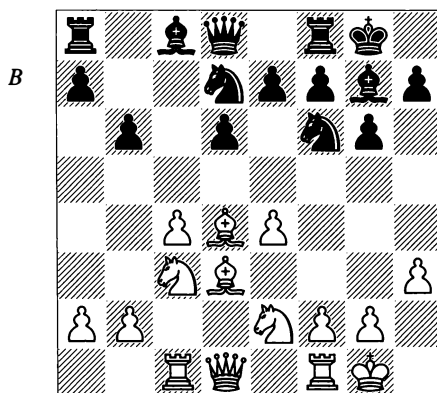
After 9 d5 ♞e5 10 0-0 e6 Black will have excellent play, as he obtains the bishop-pair. The tempo lost (...c6-c5) is offset by the mediocre placement of the knight on e2.

9...b6 10 ♞c1

Here 10 d5!? e6 (10...♞e5 11 f4 ♞xd3 12 ♟xd3) would be unclear.

10...cxd4 11 ♙xd4!? (D)

Perhaps White should have preferred 11 ♞xd4 ♙b7, with equality.



11...♙h6! 12 ♞c2?

A serious mistake. The compulsory 12 f4 e5 13 ♙e3 exf4 14 ♙xf4 ♙xf4 15 ♞xf4 ♙b7 offers chances for both sides.

12...e5! 13 ♙e3 ♙xe3 14 fxe3 ♞c5

White agreed to the doubling of his pawns on the e-file because he thought he could develop an initiative on the kingside and especially on the f-file. Black has a better pawn-skeleton, as his backward d6-pawn cannot be approached by White.

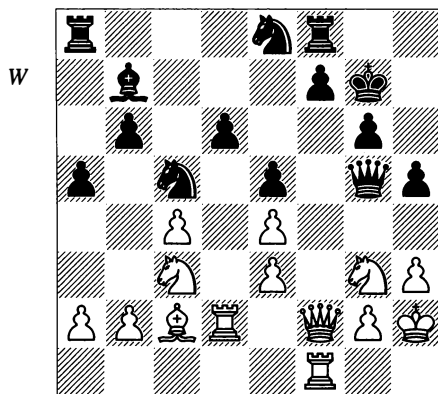
15 ♞g3 ♙b7 16 ♞d2?!

Moves like 16 b4 or 16 ♞cf2 are more in the spirit of White's plan and should be preferred.

16...♖e8 17 ♖c2

17 b4?! ♜xd3 ♜c7 19 ♜b3 ♜c8 20 ♜d5 ♜xd5 21 cxd5 ♜g7 leaves Black with a clear advantage.

17...♜g5 18 ♜e1 a5 19 ♜f2 h5 20 ♜h2 ♜g7 (D)



Black is methodically building up his position, principally aiming for a favourable end-game in which the weaknesses of White's pawn-structure will come to the fore. White must react promptly by regrouping his pieces.

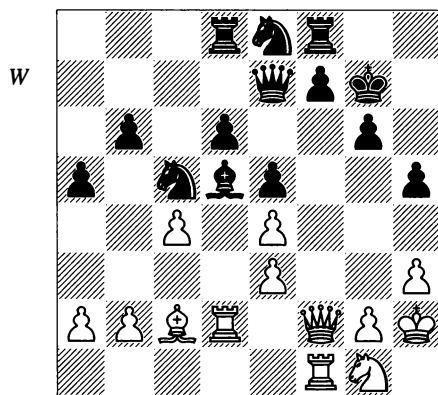
21 ♜ge2! ♜d8 22 ♜g1 ♜e7!

The immediate 22...♜f6? is a gross mistake due to 23 ♜f3 ♜h6 24 ♜xe5!.

23 ♜d5

Compulsory, as 23 ♜f3 ♜f6 24 ♜h4 ♜d7 (threatening 25...♜fxe4!) 25 ♜g5 ♜h7 26 ♜f3 ♜xh4 27 ♜xh4 ♜g5 would be favourable for Black.

23...♜xd5 (D)



24 exd5

24 cxd5 ♜f6 25 ♜f3 ♜c8 leaves White defenceless against the threatened invasion by the black pieces down the c-file, while the c2-bishop will turn into a big pawn.

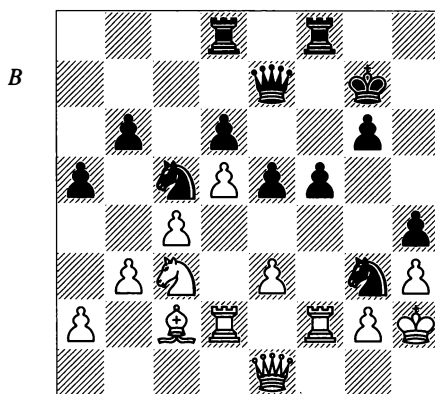
24...f5! 25 ♜e2?!

25 ♜f3 offers better defensive opportunities, as it controls the crucial squares g5 and h4.

25...♜f6 26 ♜c3? h4?

Strategically a correct move, gaining control over the dark squares. However, White's last move allowed Black to cash in immediately with 26...♜g4+! 27 hxg4 fxg4 28 ♜e1 ♜xf1 29 ♜xf1 ♜h4+ 30 ♜g1 g3 31 ♜f3 ♜f8.

27 b3 ♜h5 28 ♜e1 ♜g3 29 ♜ff2 (D)



29...♜a8

Incomprehensible; 29...♜c8 is better. Black has such a good position that he can afford to 'waste' moves without any real consequences.

30 a3 ♜ac8 31 ♜d1 ♜g5 32 ♜g1 ♜f6!

The right plan. Black will concentrate his forces on the kingside and then launch a strong attack with the advance of his f-pawn. It is hard for White to counter Black's plan as he lacks sufficient counterplay (33 b4? axb4 34 axb4 ♜a6).

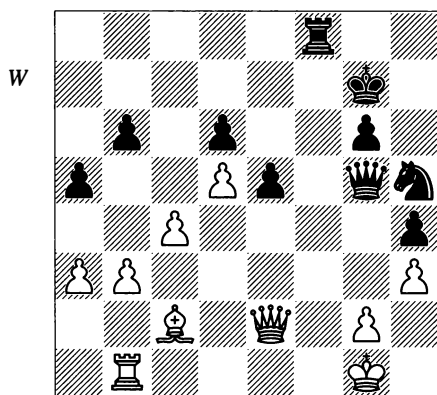
33 ♜b1 ♜d7!

Forestalling any possible counterplay with b4.

34 e4 fxe4!

After 34...f4? 35 ♜d1! White would be back in the game.

35 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 36 ♜xe4 ♜xf2 37 ♜xf2 ♜f8+ 38 ♜g1 ♜f6 39 ♜e2 ♜h5 (D)



The piece exchanges have clarified Black's advantage. He has a superior minor piece and his domination of the dark squares guarantees either a winning attack or a much better ending. The pawn-structure doesn't help White at all, as almost all of his pawns are placed on the same colour squares as his bishop, while the protected passed black e-pawn must also be taken seriously into account.

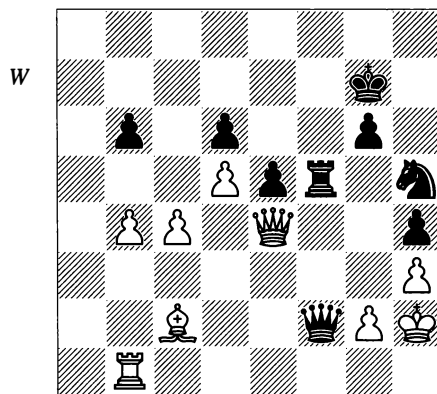
40 b4

The ending resulting from 40 ♖g4 ♗xg4 41 hxg4 ♕g3 is winning for Black.

40...axb4 41 axb4 ♗f4 42 ♖e4

Forced (42 ♜f1? ♕g3!) because Black was threatening 42...♕g3 43 ♖d3 e4!.

42...♖f2+ 43 ♖h2 ♜f5! (D)



The last stage of the attack: the black rook enters the fray via the g5-square, from which it not only attacks but also defends against White's threats on g6.

44 ♜c1

White would also lose after 44 ♕d3 ♖g3+ 45 ♖h1 (45 ♖g1 ♕f4) 45...♕f6! 46 ♖e2 ♜f2.

44...♜g5 45 ♖f3 ♜xg2+!

With a simple tactical stroke Black clarifies the result of the game.

46 ♖xg2 ♖f4+ 47 ♖g1 ♖xc1+ 48 ♖h2 ♖f4+ 49 ♖g1 ♕g3 0-1

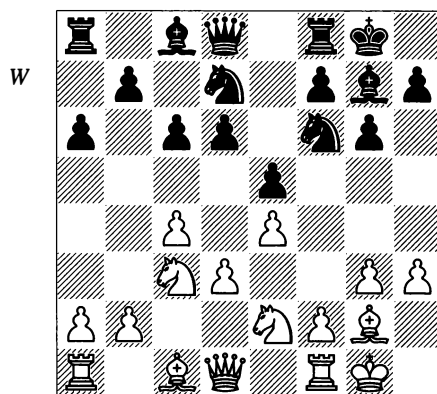
Oney – Grivas

Athens 1984

1 c4 g6 2 ♕c3 ♜g7 3 g3 ♕f6 4 ♕g2 0-0 5 e4 d6 6 ♕ge2 e5 7 d3 c6 8 0-0 ♕bd7

Black has also tried the immediate 8...a6 9 a4!? a5! 10 h3 ♕a6 11 f4 ♕d7 12 ♕e3 ♕dc5 with unclear play, Turner-Grivas, Athens 1997.

9 h3 a6 (D)



10 ♕e3

Another possibility is 10 a4!? ♕e8 11 a5 f5 12 exf5 gxf5 13 d4 ♖f6 14 ♕e3 ♖f7 15 d5 c5 16 f4 e4 with a satisfactory position for Black, Koliopoulos-Grivas, Athens 1992, but White can improve his play.

10...b5 11 ♖d2 ♖b7 12 ♕g5?!

A pointless move. White should prefer 12 b4 or 12 f4 with an unclear position.

12...♕c5! 13 b4 ♕e6 14 ♖h6

This shows how pointless 12 ♕g5 was, as White has now been compelled to waste a tempo.

14...♜xh6! 15 ♖xh6 c5!

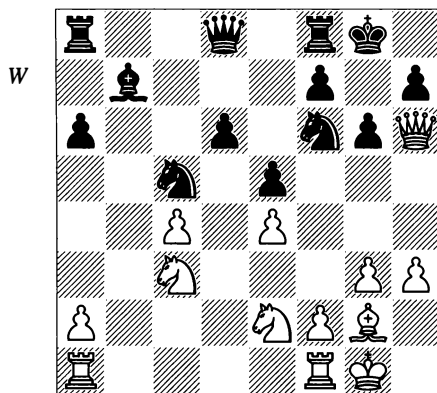
After Black has rid himself of his 'bad' bishop (with some help from White), he attacks

the centre, where he hopes to assume the initiative by tactical means.

16 bxc5

Both 16 cxb5 cxb4 17 bxa6 ♗xa6 and 16 a3 cxb4 17 axb4 bxc4 18 dxc4 ♖c8 would win a pawn for Black.

16...bxc4! 17 dxc4 ♖xc5 (D)



Black has a more pleasant position as his pawn-structure is healthy; moreover, his pieces are better placed and have targets, while White's are still searching for prospects.

18 ♖e3 ♖fd7!

Threatening 19...♗b6!.

19 ♖d5?

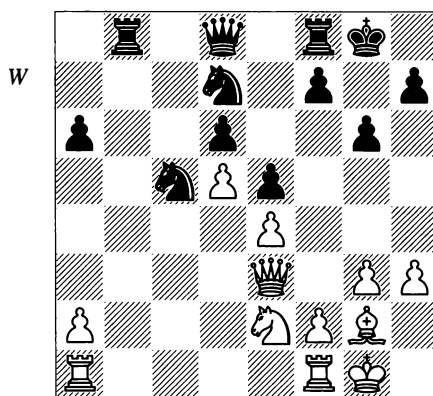
This seems to solve White's defensive problems but in reality only leads him to a very difficult position, as the situation now stabilizes in favour of the black knights. The only move was 19 ♖c1! (to defend with 19...♗b6 20 ♖e2) intending 20 ♗b3, exchanging one of the strong black steeds. Black retains a slight advantage but there is a long fight ahead.

19...♗xd5! 20 cxd5 ♖b8 (D)

Black's superiority has increased because his knights are stronger than the miserable g2-bishop, while he can also develop a strong initiative on the queenside by transferring his major pieces to that flank.

21 g4?!

A mistaken treatment of the position. White's counterplay should focus on two main ideas: getting rid of the g2-bishop or improving it (h4 and ♗h3) and the development of an attack against the black king, on the opposite flank to

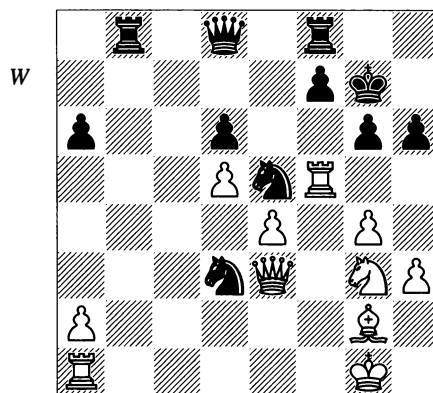


which Black's forces will be deployed. The text-move weakens all the dark squares on White's kingside and reduces the effectiveness of the g2-bishop.

21...♗g7! 22 ♖g3 h6

Black has taken preventive defensive measures and now threatens to play 23...♖g5!. The exchange of queens will stop White's offensive, ensuring Black a very favourable endgame. White, realizing his difficult positional predicament, decides to complicate even at the cost of further weakening his position.

23 f4 exf4 24 ♖xf4 ♖e5 25 ♖f5!? ♖cd3! (D)



The black knights 'dance' on the chessboard, in contrast to the g2-bishop that watches events from a distance in dismay.

26 ♗h2 ♖b6!

The exchange of queens determines the outcome in Black's favour. White cannot avoid it (27 ♖e2 ♖b2!).

27 ♖xb6 ♜xb6 28 ♜ff1 ♜b2

The superiority of the black knights, in conjunction with possession of the 2nd rank, secures Black the positional advantage required to win the game.

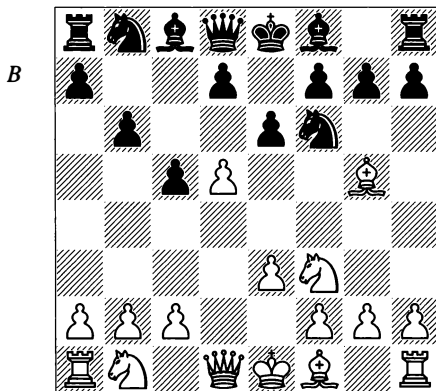
29 ♖g1 ♜c8 30 ♜h1 ♜cc2 31 ♜fb1 ♞f4 32 ♜xb2 ♞xh3+ 0-1

Grivas – Vidarsson

Reykjavik 1994

1 d4 ♞f6 2 ♞f3 e6 3 ♖g5 c5 4 e3 b6?

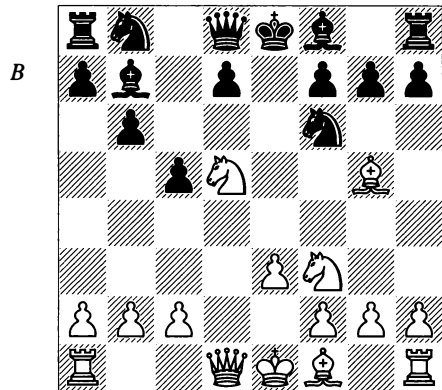
A well-known theoretical mistake that allows White to secure an advantage. It is paradoxical that, although this error has been known for approximately 50 years, it is often repeated, even in games of the highest level. Black ought to choose among the better moves 4...♜e7, 4...♜b6 and 4...cxd4.

5 d5! (D)**5...d6**

The alternatives are not of much help:

a) 5...h6 6 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 7 ♞c3 ♜b7 (7...a6 8 a4 d6 9 ♞d2 e5 with advantage for White, Petrosian-Peterson, USSR 1960, or 7...d6 8 ♞d2 e5 9 ♜b5+ ♜d7 10 0-0 ♜xb5 11 ♞xb5 ♜d8 12 f4 a6 13 ♞c3 ♞d7 14 f5 again with advantage, Chernin-Kudrin, Mendoza U-26 Wch 1985) 8 e4 (8 ♜c4!? a6 9 a4 d6 10 ♜d3 e5 11 a5! bxa5 {11...b5? 12 ♜xb5+!} 12 0-0 ♜d8 13 ♞d2 ♜e7 14 ♞b3 0-0 15 ♞xa5 with advantage, Cifuentes-Tarjan, Malta OL 1980) 8...♜d8 9 e5 exd5 10 ♞xd5 ♞c6 11 ♜c4 with a plus, Kavalek-Brunner, Solingen 1986.

b) 5...exd5 6 ♞c3 ♜b7 7 ♞xd5 (D) and now:



b1) 7...♜xd5 8 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 9 ♜xd5 ♞c6 (9...♜xb2? 10 ♞d1 ♜b4+ 11 c3! ♜xc3+ 12 ♞d2 ♜a1+ 13 ♖e2 – this is the critical tactical justification of White's 5th move) 10 0-0-0! (10 ♜c4 ♜e7 11 0-0-0, Petrosian-Kozma, Munich OL 1958) 10...♞d8 11 ♜b5! ♜e7 12 ♜e4 (12 ♜xc6 dxc6 13 ♜e5 with advantage, Mi.Tseitlin-Damjanović, Prague 1983) 12...0-0 13 ♞d2! ♞b8 14 ♞hd1 with a plus for White, Barlov-Greenfeld, Biel open 1985.

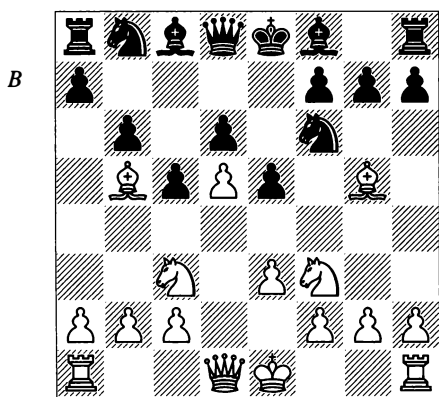
b2) 7...♜e7 8 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 9 c3 0-0 10 ♜c4 (10 ♜c2!?, Barlov-Ostermeyer, Biel open 1985) 10...a6 11 0-0 b5 12 ♜b3 d6 13 ♜d2 ♞d7 14 ♞fd1 ♜xd5 15 ♜xd5 with advantage for White, Yusupov-Karpov, London Ct (5) 1989.

c) 5...b5!? 6 dxe6! (6 ♞c3 a6 7 a4 b4 8 ♞e4 d6 9 ♜c4 e5 10 ♜d3 ♜e7 11 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 12 ♞xf6+ ♜xf6 = Cifuentes-Speelman, Malta OL 1980) 6...fxe6 7 ♖xb5 ♜a5+ 8 ♞c3 ♞e4 and now 9 ♞e5!! appears to be a killing move for White.

6 ♞c3

White was also better after 6 dxe6 ♖xe6 7 ♜b5+ ♞bd7 8 ♞c3 a6 9 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 10 ♞d5 ♜e7 11 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 12 ♞xf6+ ♜xf6 13 ♜d5 ♖e7 14 0-0-0 ♜ac8 15 ♜e4+ in Yusupov-J.Fries Nielsen, Skien jr Wch 1979. Another attempt is 6 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 7 ♞c3 a6 8 ♞d2 ♜d8 9 a4 ♜e7 10 ♜e2 0-0 11 0-0 ♞d7 12 ♞c4 with advantage, Barlov-Andersson, Haninge 1988.

6...e5 7 ♜b5+! (D)**7...♜d7?!**



Black had to reply with 7...Qbd7 as the exchange of light-squared bishops does not suit him due to the weaknesses created on his light squares.

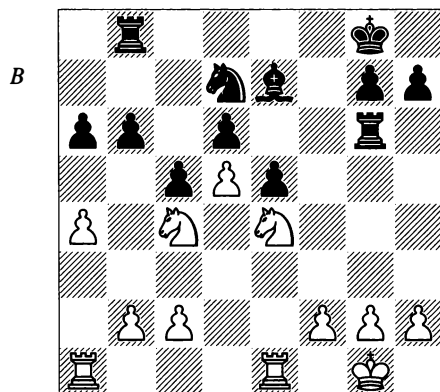
8 a4! a6 9 Qxf6!

Favourable exchanges, executed with accuracy!

9...Wxf6 10 Qxd7+ Qxd7 11 0-0 Qe7 12 Qd2 Wg6 13 e4 0-0 14 Qc4

White has the advantage in view of his greater spatial control and superior minor piece. Black has difficulty finding a satisfactory plan, as the standard advance ...b5 will allow the manoeuvre Qa5-c6. In the end he decides on developing play with the ...f5 advance, but this surrenders the e4-square to White.

14...f5 15 exf5 Qxf5 16 Wd3! Qg5 17 Wxg6 Qxg6 18 Qfel Qb8 19 Qe4 (D)



The white knights dominate the board, forestalling any active ideas Black may have.

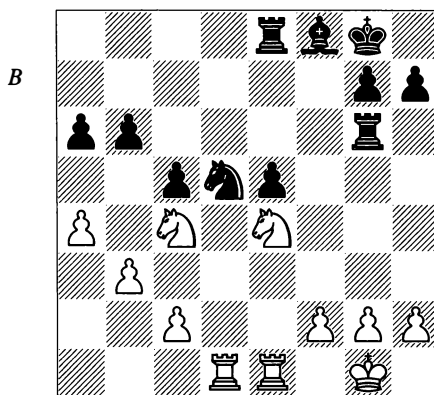
19...Qf8 20 b3 Qf6?!

It is hard to suggest anything better than this move, by which Black tries to involve himself in the game, even at the cost of the deterioration of his pawn-structure.

21 Qcxd6 Qxd5

Unfortunately for Black, he cannot get rid of his bad bishop as he loses a pawn after 21...Qxd6 22 Qxd6 Qxd5 23 Qc4.

22 Qc4 Qe8 23 Qad1 (D)



White's superiority is undeniable and is mainly based on his superior minor piece. A significant role in White's advantage is played by Black's ugly pawn-structure and the passivity of his pieces.

23...Qf4 24 g3 b5 25 axb5 axb5 26 Qe3

The careless 26 Qa3? would lose all of White's advantage after 26...c4! 27 Qxb5 cxb3 28 cxb3 Qb8.

26...Qe6 27 Qd7 Qd4 28 Qa1!

White will increase his advantage as his rooks will occupy the 7th rank.

28...Qb6 29 Qa7 b4 30 h4!

Intending the further advance h5-h6, destroying Black's defence. The balance is now decisively tipping in White's favour as he is constantly improving his position while the black pieces have fallen into passivity.

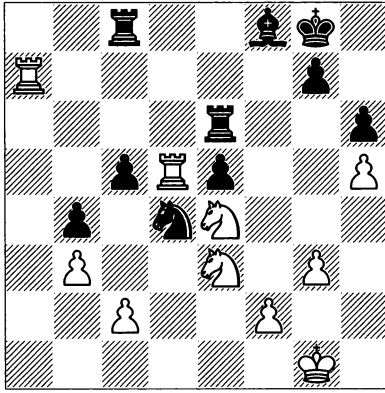
30...Qb5 31 Qa5! Qeb8 32 h5 h6 33 Qc4 Qe6 34 Qd5 Qd4 35 Qe3 Qc8 36 Qa7! (D)

A small material gain with 36 Qxc5 does not figure in White's plans. His position is so good that to give up one of his knights he must obtain something really big in return!

P. Pandavos – Grivas

Athens 2000

B



36...b5 37 Bb7 d4 38 g2 Bc8 39 g4
e6 40 e3 Bc8 41 d4 d7 Bc8 42 g4!

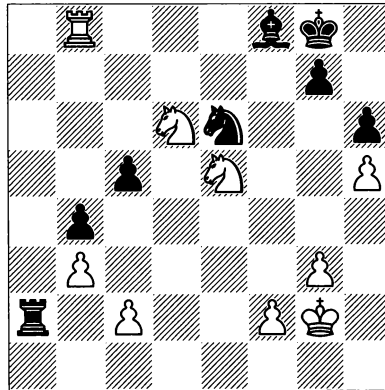
White wins material without surrendering any of his advantages.

42...Bxd7

42...Bc8 43 f6+ gxf6 (or 43...h8 44
fxh6!) 44 f6+ h8 45 Bb7#.

43 Bxd7 h8 44 Bxe5 g8 45 g4 Bc6 46
Bd8 e6 47 Bb8 Ba6 48 e5 Ba2 49 d6!
(D)

B



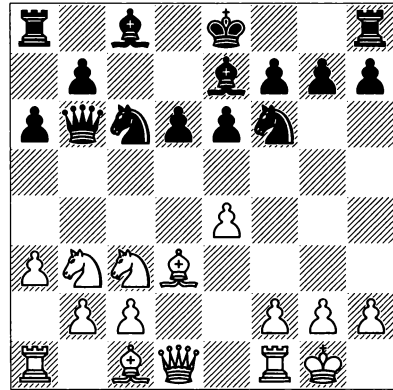
The start of a nice combination, highlighting the ineffectiveness of the black pieces that are unable to react.

49...Bxc2 50 f5! Bc2 51 e7+ h7 52
d7g6! Bxe5

Pure desperation, but 52...g8 53 d7! or
52...d6 53 Bb8# is certainly no better!

53 Bxe5 d6 54 Bb6 Bxe5 55 Bxe6 d4
56 Bc6 g8 57 f4 f7 58 f3 e7 59 e4
d7 60 d5 e7 61 Bxc5 1-0

W



10 Bc3

The development of the bishop on d2 is worthy of attention; for example: 10 Bc3 Bc7 11 Bh1 b5 12 f4 Bb7?! (12...Bb8!) 13 Bf3 0-0 14 Bae1! (14 Bb3 b4 15 e2 bxa3 16 bxa3 e5 17 Bg3 Bc8 18 f5 a5 is unclear, Camilleri-Grivas, Athens 1993) 14...b4 15 d1 bxa3 16 bxa3 d5?! 17 exd5 Bxd5 18 Bb3 g6 19 c4 Bf6 20 Bc3 and White is better, P.Pandavos-Grivas, Corfu 1993.

10...Bc7 11 f4 b5 12 Bf3 0-0 13 Bae1 Bb8!

An important idea. Black avoids the 'natural' 13...Bb7?! as in that case he not only weakens the e6-square (that usually comes under pressure after White plays f5) but also forfeits the possibility of playing on the b-file, which will eventually be opened. This pre-emptive placement of the rook highlights the aimlessness of 9 a3?!

14 Bh1 b4 15 e2

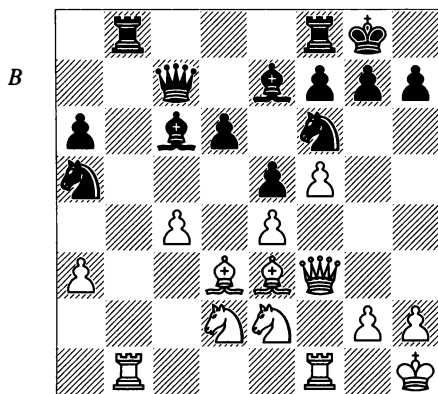
This seems unpleasant, but after 15 axb4 Bxb4 Black gains at least the advantage of the bishop-pair.

15...bxa3 16 bxa3 e5! 17 f5 ♖a5 18 ♜d2

The exchange of knights with 18 ♜d2 ♗xa5 would highlight the weakness of a3 and also support Black's central ...d5 advance.

18...♙b7 19 ♖b1 ♙c6 20 c4 (D)

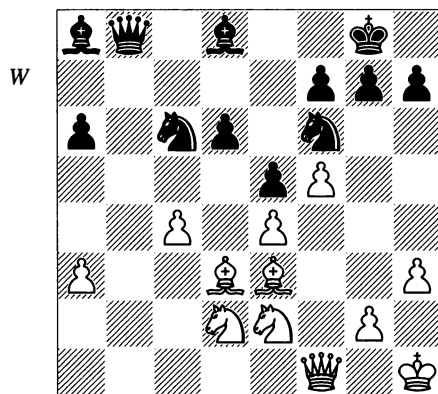
Forced in view of the threat of ...d5.



20...♖xb1!

A very significant detail. Black seeks major-piece exchanges so as to forestall any aggressive action by White, aiming at the favourable ending guaranteed by his healthier pawn-structure.

21 ♖xb1 ♖b8 22 ♖b4 ♙a8! 23 h3 ♜c6 24 ♖xb8+ ♗xb8 25 ♗f1 ♙d8! (D)



The forgotten black bishop prepares to enter the fray via a5 or exchange itself for the e3-bishop.

26 ♗b1

Otherwise 26...♙b6 would be strong, while 26 ♗g1 is met by 26...♜d7!.

26...♗xb1+ 27 ♙xb1 ♜d7 28 ♙d3 ♙b7 29 ♜b3 ♙a5! 30 ♜ec1 ♗f8 31 ♜xa5 ♙xa5 32 ♜b3 ♙d8 33 ♗g1 a5!

Seeking further space gain, restriction of the white knight and to fix the white pawn on a3.

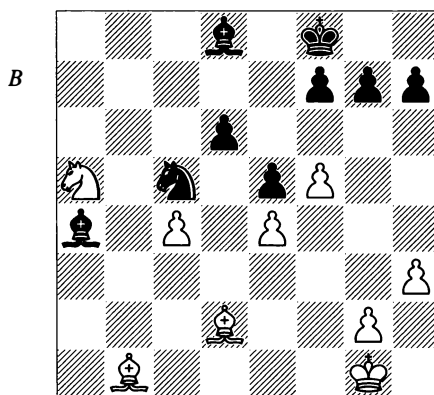
34 a4?!

White should stay put and await developments.

34...♙c6! 35 ♙d2 ♙xa4 36 ♜xa5

36 ♙xa5 loses material to 36...♙xb3! 37 ♙xd8 ♜c5.

36...♜c5 37 ♙b1 (D)



It seems that White has managed to defend. However, things are not exactly the way he would like, as the exchange of pawns on the queenside allows Black to give up the two bishops, since his knight will be the superior minor piece in view of the fact that pawns exist effectively on one wing only. Moreover, Black also wins material, but this would not be significant enough if he did not have the knight.

37...♙xa5! 38 ♙xa5 ♙b3 39 ♗f2 ♙xc4 40 ♗e3 ♙f1 41 ♗f2 ♙d3!

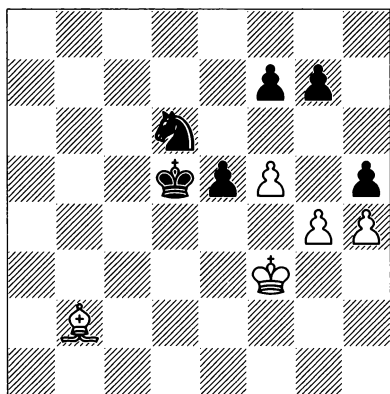
Securing a won ending, thanks to the extra pawn and knight vs bishop, aided by the presence of pawns on only one wing.

42 ♙xd3 ♜xd3+ 43 ♗e3 ♜c5 44 g4 ♗e7 45 ♙b4 ♗d7 46 h4 ♗c6 47 ♙a5 d5!

The exchange of pawns allows the black king to centralize, while also transforming the e5-pawn into a passed one.

48 exd5+ ♗xd5 49 ♙c3 ♜e4 50 ♙b2 ♜d6 51 ♗f3 h5! (D)

W



The last pawn-break, shattering the white pawns. The end is near.

52 ♖a3 e4+! 53 ♜f4 hxc4 54 ♜xc4

The pawn ending after 54 ♖xd6 ♜xd6 55 ♜xe4 g3 56 ♜f3 ♜e5 is easily won for Black.

54...e3! 55 h5 f6!

Avoiding a simple trap White had set (56 f6!).

56 ♜f3 ♜xf5 57 ♖f8 0-1

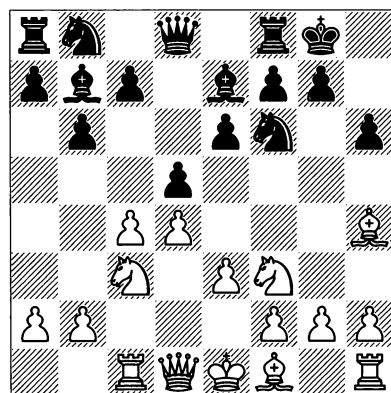
White simultaneously resigned, realizing the futility of resistance after 57...♜d4. White's last trap, 58 ♖xg7 ♜xg7 59 h6, does not work in view of 59...♜e6! 60 h7 ♜g5+.

Grivas – Kanavarakis

Athens 1984

1 c4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜f3 ♖e7 4 ♜c3 ♜f6 5 ♖g5 h6 6 ♖h4 0-0 7 e3 b6 8 ♜c1 ♖b7 (D)

W



9 cxd5

This line doesn't offer White much but 'tests' Black, who must tread very carefully.

9...♜xd5

Black has also tried 9...exd5 10 ♖d3 (10 ♜b3 ♜e8 11 ♖d3 ♜bd7 12 ♖b1 c6 13 0-0 ♜e4 14 ♖xe7 ♜xe7 15 ♜c2 g6 16 a3 is unclear, Grivas-G.Dimitriadis, Athens 1981) 10...c5 11 0-0 ♜bd7 12 ♖f5 ± a6?? 13 ♖xd7 ♜xd7 14 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 15 dxc5 bxc5 16 ♜a4 ♜e7 17 ♜xc5 ♜ac8 18 b4 ♜xc5 19 ♜xc5 ♖c6 20 ♜d4 ♜d6 21 ♜g4 ♖xd4 22 ♜xd4 ♜e8 23 ♜c1 ♜e5 24 a3 ♜g5 25 ♜e4 1-0 Grivas-P.Short, Dubai OL 1986.

10 ♜xd5 exd5

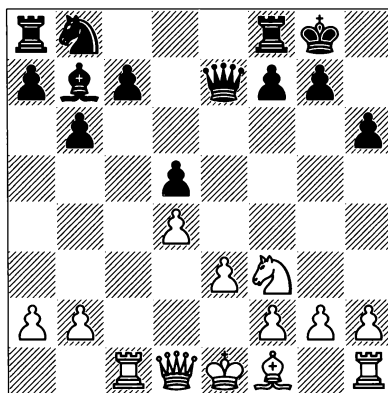
Most people prefer 10...♖xd5! 11 ♖xe7 ♜xe7:

a) 12 ♖c4 ♖b7! (not 12...♜b4+? 13 ♜d2 ♜xd2+ 14 ♜xd2 ♖xc4 15 ♜xc4 ♜c8 16 ♜hc1 ♜a6 17 b4 ± Grivas-Psarakis, Athens 1982, or 12...♖xf3 13 gxf3 c5 14 dxc5 ♜d8 15 ♜e2 ♜xc5 16 0-0 ♜d7 17 f4 ± Grivas-Li Zunian, Kavala 1984) 13 ♜a4 ♜c8 14 0-0 c5 15 dxc5 ♜xc5 16 ♖e2 ♜d7 17 ♜fd1 ♜xc1 18 ♜xc1 ♜f6 = Grivas-S.Simić, Vršac 1983.

b) 12 ♖d3 ♜c8 13 0-0 c5 14 ♜e5 ♖b7 15 dxc5 ♜xc5 16 ♜xc5 ♜xc5 17 ♜h5 ♜c7 18 ♜g4 ♜d7 19 ♜xh6+ gxh6 20 ♜xh6 ♜f8 21 ♜g5+ ♖h8 22 ♜h6+ 1/2-1/2 Grivas-Filip, Thessaloniki 1983.

11 ♖xe7 ♜xe7 (D)

W



12 ♖a4!

12 ♖d3 c5 13 dxc5 bxc5 14 0-0 ♜d7 15 ♜e2 ♜fc8 16 ♜fd1 a5 17 ♜d2 g6 18 h4 ♜f6 19 ♜d1 a4 is equal, Grivas-R.Simić, Pernik 1983.

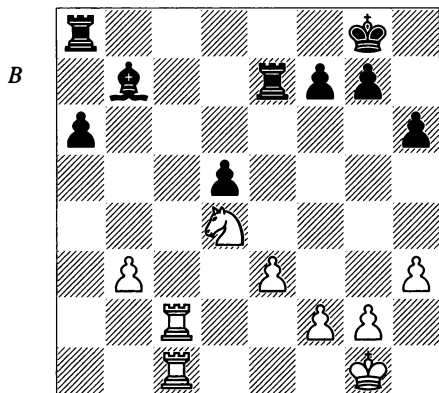
12...♖c8! 13 ♖e2!? c5 14 ♖a3 ♜d7 15 0-0 ♜f6?!

Black does not treat the position correctly. Better is 15...♜f8! 16 dxc5 bxc5 17 ♖a6 ♖ab8 18 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 19 ♖c2 c4 20 ♖c3 ♖f6 21 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 22 b3 = Grivas-Gratseas, Iraklion 1984.

16 ♖c2 ♖c7 17 dxc5 bxc5 18 ♖fc1 ♜e4?!

Black has problems supporting his c5-pawn, but the immediate 18...c4 is better.

19 ♖d3! c4 20 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 21 ♖xe4! ♖xe4 22 ♜d4 a6 23 b3! cxb3 24 axb3 ♖e7 25 h3 (D)



After a forced sequence White has obtained the advantage thanks to his superior minor piece, the weaknesses in Black's pawn-structure and the possession of the open c-file. Of course, the conversion of this positional advantage into material gain still lies ahead, but White is in no hurry as there is no danger of counterplay by Black.

25...g6?! 26 h4 h5?!

Black's last two moves have worsened his position, since now all of his pawns have been placed on squares of the same colour as his bishop.

27 ♖c5 ♖b8 28 ♜f1 ♖d7 29 ♖c7

Invasive the 7th rank as well!

29...♖bd8 30 ♜f3 f6 31 ♜d4 ♜f7 32 f4 ♖e7 33 f5! ♖dd7

33...g5 does not change the evaluation of the position but it complicates matters and should therefore be tried.

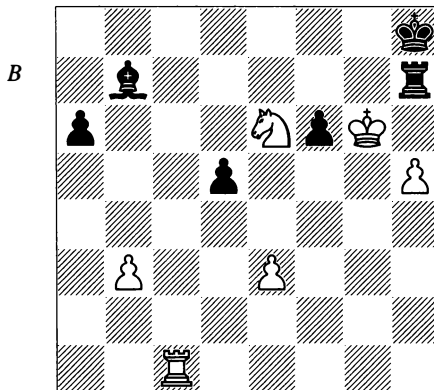
34 fxg6+ ♜xg6 35 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 36 ♜f2 ♖e7 37 ♜f3 ♖d7 38 g4!

Creating a strong passed pawn that will further tie down the black pieces. One is struck by the impotence of the b7-bishop.

38...hxg4+ 39 ♜xg4 ♖e7 40 h5+ ♜h7 41 ♜f5!

Despite the reduced material White's advantage is growing, as now his king participates in the play as well.

41...♜h8 42 ♜e6 ♖h7 43 ♜g6 (D)



A wonderful position for White as Black is practically in zugzwang! Black now resorted to pawn sacrifices hoping to relieve his position, but this measure was not enough to save him.

43...d4 44 exd4 ♖e4+ 45 ♜xf6 ♖b7 46 ♖c7 ♖xc7 47 ♜xc7 ♜h7 48 b4 ♜h6 49 d5 ♜xh5 50 d6 ♖c6 51 ♜xa6 1-0

Grivas – M. Burgess

European Junior Ch, Groningen 1985/6

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♜f3 ♜bd7 4 ♜c3 e5 5 ♖g5!?

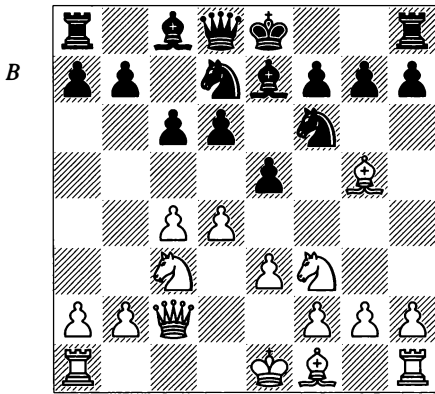
One of White's most interesting ways of meeting the Old Indian Defence.

5...♖e7 6 e3

The standard continuation, although 6 e4 c6 7 ♖e2 ♖c7 8 0-0 h6 9 ♖e3 g5 10 ♜e1 ♜f8 11 c5 ♜g6 12 cxd6 ♖xd6 13 d5 also gave White the advantage in Grivas-Drepaniotis, Athens 1980.

6...c6 7 ♖c2 (D)

Another option is 7 ♖d3 ♖a5 8 ♖d2 ♜f8 9 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 10 ♜e4 ± (1/2-1/2 Grivas-Makropoulos, Athens 1986).



7...Qa5

This move is practically forced as 7...0-0 8 Qd3 h6 (8...Qc7? 9 Qxh7+ Qxh7 10 Qxe7 Qe8 11 Qh4 Qdf6 12 0-0 Qg4 13 Qg5 Qxg5 14 Qxg5 Qh7 15 Qh4 +- Grivas-Zakhariev, Panormo rpd 2001) 9 Qh4 Qe8 10 0-0-0! (10 0-0?! Qb8 11 b4 exd4 12 exd4 Qf8 13 h3 ± Grivas-I.Jones, Thessaloniki OL 1984) gives White a very strong attack.

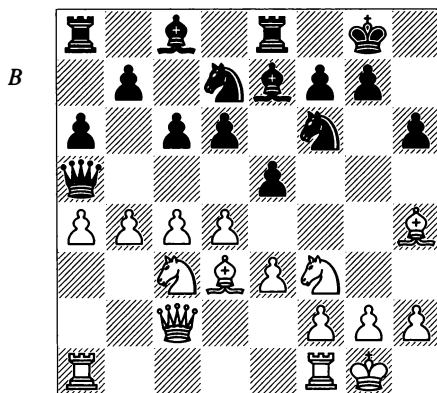
8 Qd3 a6 9 0-0

9 0-0-0 would now be risky, as 9...b5 gives Black the initiative. The black queen is misplaced on a5 and will soon be forced to retreat, losing more time.

9...h6 10 Qh4 0-0 11 a4! Qe8?!

Black should voluntarily retreat by 11...Qc7 12 b4 a5! ±.

12 b4!! (D)



An excellent move, gaining space on the queenside as Black cannot accept the offered

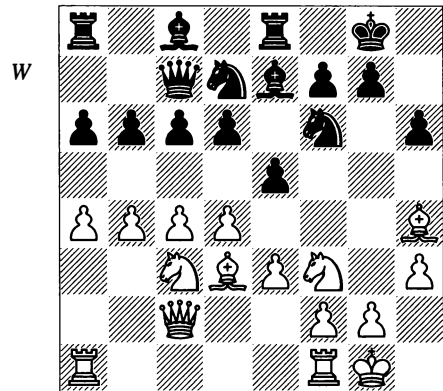
pawn pseudo-sacrifice (12...Qxb4? 13 a5! and 14 Qfb1).

12...Qc7 13 h3

13 a5 could also have been played but White had something different in mind.

13...b6?! (D)

13...a5 is clearly superior.



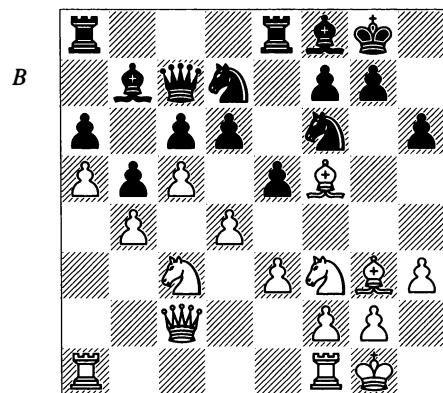
14 Qg3 Qb7 15 c5!

White's idea, attacking the black central pawns.

15...Qf8!? 16 a5! b5

After 16...bxc5 17 bxc5 Black's pawn-structure would be destroyed.

17 Qf5! (D)



White is setting up a position where the c3-knight will be superior to the b7-bishop and thus directs future piece exchanges towards this aim.

17...Qad8 18 Qfd1 Qd5?

It is hard to suggest a good move or idea for Black, but this move should definitely have been avoided.

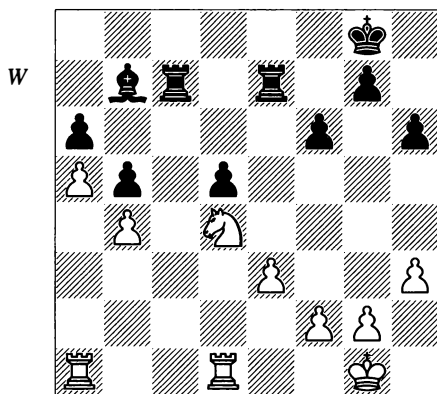
19 cxd6 ♗xd6 20 ♖xd5 cxd5 21 ♔xc7 ♗xc7 22 ♗xd7 ♖xd7 23 dxe5!?

Naturally, the simple 23 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 24 ♖xe5 ♖c7 would also have won, but White does not wish to provide Black with any kind of compensation.

23...f6! 24 e6!

Most solid, as the alternative 24 exf6 ♗xg3 25 fxg3 ♖xe3 offers Black some chances of survival.

24...♖xe6 25 ♖d4 ♖ee7 26 ♗xc7 ♖xc7 (D)



White's superiority is clear, as his knight commands the entire position, in contrast to the miserable b7-bishop that, like a fat pawn, is restricted to the protection of Black's 'other' pawns on the queenside and in the centre. The conversion of the advantage does not encounter any special obstacles as Black is condemned to

simply observing events as they unfold, unable to react.

27 ♖ab1!

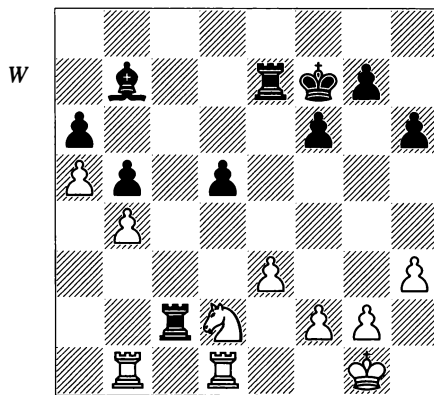
Threatening 28 ♖b3 and ♖c5.

27...♗c4 28 ♖f3!

Renewing the threat of occupying the c5-square.

28...♗f7 29 ♖d2 ♖c2? (D)

Time-trouble in a ruined position. The only defence was 29...♖c6 30 ♖b3 ♖d6 31 ♖c5, when White's advantage is decisive but Black can still fight.



30 ♖b3 ♖c4 31 ♖c5 ♗a8 32 ♖xa6

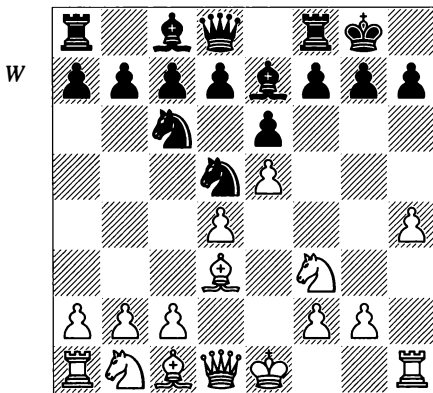
White has won material while retaining his positional advantage in its entirety. The game is not especially interesting from this point on, and the end was:

32...♗e6 33 ♖c5 ♖d6 34 ♖d4 ♖xd4 35 exd4 ♖d8 36 a6 ♖e8 37 ♗f1 ♖e7 38 ♖a1 ♖a7 39 ♖e1 ♖e7 40 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 41 h4 g5 42 hxg5 fxg5 43 ♗e2 h5 44 ♗f3 ♖d6 45 ♗g3 1-0

Classical Bishop Sacrifice

The classical bishop sacrifice (also known as the 'Greek Gift' sacrifice) is an effective way of attacking the opponent's king and is characterized by the move ♖xh7+ (or ...♗xh2+). Its aim is the weakening of the opponent's defensive shield and the opening of the h-file, to facilitate further offensive action.

The first appearance of the classical bishop sacrifice in print is encountered in the book by Greco (1619), after the (dubious) moves **1 e4 e6 2 d4 ♟f6 3 ♗d3 ♟c6 4 ♟f3 ♗e7 5 h4 0-0 6 e5 ♟d5 (D)**.



White now executes the classical bishop sacrifice:

7 ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 8 ♟g5+

Black's options all lose:

8...♗xg5

Or: **8...♜g8 9 ♖h5 ♜e8 10 ♖h7+ ♜f8 11 ♖h8#; 8...♜g6 9 h5+ ♜h6 10 ♟xf7+.**

9 hxg5+ ♜g6

9...♜g8 10 ♖h5.

10 ♖h5+ ♜f5 11 ♖h3+ ♜g6 12 ♖h7#

In the example presented above, White enjoyed all the 'required' elements for a successful outcome of the sacrifice:

1) The possibility of making the sacrifice with ♖xh7+.

2) The presence of pieces to participate in the attack, in their best positions (knight on f3, ready to come to g5, bishop on c1, queen on the d1-h5 diagonal, pawns on e5 and h4, rook on h1), in conjunction with the necessary absence of the f6-knight.

The word 'required' was written in quotation marks because every position has its own peculiarities and we cannot set forth accurate rules for the successful outcome of the sacrifice. The sequence ♖xh7+, ♟g5+ and ♖h5 occurs in many cases, but is not absolutely essential for the execution of the sacrifice. The chess-player who decides to make the classical bishop sacrifice must carefully calculate all possible continuations and reach a decision regarding the position on the board, avoiding generalities.

The theoreticians have tried to systematize the positions allowing the classical bishop sacrifice, without successful results. The 'required' elements mentioned above may support the sacrifice but are not strictly necessary.

Another option at the defender's disposal is the rejection of the sacrifice. This is a rare occurrence, but the side sacrificing must take this option into account, so as not to encounter unpleasant surprises. The general guidelines are acceptable, but each position is unique!

Polugaevsky – Tal

USSR Ch, Moscow 1969

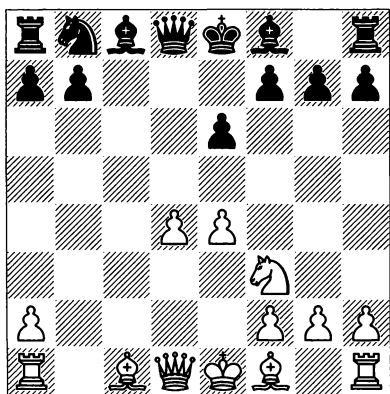
1 c4 ♟f6 2 ♟c3 e6 3 ♟f3 d5 4 d4 c5 5 cxd5 ♟xd5 6 e4 ♟xc3 7 bxc3 cxd4 8 cxd4 (D)

8...♗b4+

Black has also tried **8...♟c6 9 ♗c4 b5!? 10 ♗e2 (10 ♗d3?! ♗b4+ 11 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 12 ♖xd2 a6 13 a4 0-0 14 ♖c3 ♗b7 = Spassky-Fischer, Reykjavik Wch (9) 1972) 10...♗b4+ 11 ♗d2 ♖a5 12 a4 bxa4 13 ♖xa4 ± Grivas-Kourkounakis, Corfu 1993.**

9 ♗d2 ♗xd2+

B



White gains a clear advantage after the inaccurate 9...♖a5?! 10 ♖b1! ♙xd2+ 11 ♖xd2 ♖xd2+ 12 ♙xd2.

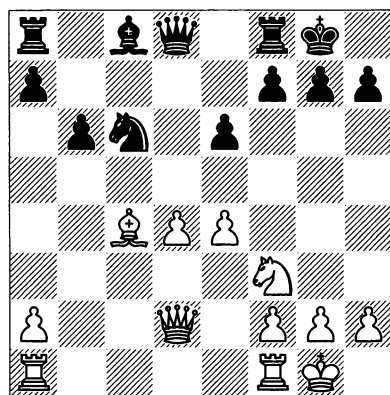
10 ♖xd2 0-0 11 ♙c4 ♘c6

Another option is 11...b6 12 0-0 ♙b7 13 ♖fe1 ♘d7 14 ♖ad1 ♖c8 15 ♙d3 (15 ♙b3 ♘f6 16 d5 exd5 17 exd5 ♖c5 18 d6 is also good, F.Olafsson-Unzicker, Lugano 1970) 15...♖e8 16 ♖e3 ♖c3 17 e5 ♖c7 18 ♘g5 ♘f8 19 ♘e4 ♙xe4 20 ♖xe4 ♖d8 21 h4 with the initiative for White, Korchnoi-Najdorf, Beverwijk 1971.

12 0-0 b6 (D)

12...♖d6 is quite interesting, despite the fact that Black quickly lost the stem game: 13 ♖ad1 ♖d8 14 ♖fe1 ♙d7 15 d5 exd5 16 exd5 ♘e7 17 ♘g5 ♙a4 18 ♘xf7 ♗xf7 19 ♖e6 ♖xe6 20 dxe6+ ♗e8 21 ♙d3 ♙xd1 22 ♖xd1 ♖ac8 23 h3 ♘d5 24 ♖f3 1-0 Browne-H.Olafsson, Reykjavik 1980.

W



13 ♖ad1!

The best set-up for White is to place his rooks on the e- and d-files, supporting future central advances. 13 ♖fd1 ♙b7 14 ♖f4 ♖c8 15 d5 exd5 16 ♙xd5 ♖e7 17 ♘g5 ♘e5 18 ♙xb7 ♘g6 19 ♖f5 ♖xb7 20 ♖d7 ♖a6 led to an unclear position in Alekhine-Euwe, The Hague Wch (18) 1937.

13...♙b7 14 ♖fe1 ♘a5

14...♖c8?! is inaccurate: 15 d5! exd5 16 ♙xd5 ♘a5 17 ♖f4 ♖c7 18 ♖f5 ♙xd5 19 exd5 with advantage for White, Spassky-Petrosian, Moscow Wch (5) 1969.

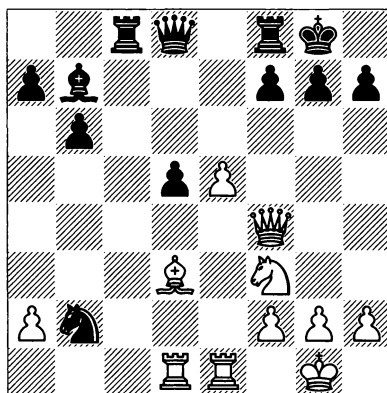
15 ♙d3 ♖c8 16 d5! exd5

Forced, as 16...♘c4? loses to 17 ♙xc4 ♖xc4 18 dxe6 ♖xd2 19 exf7+ ♖xf7 20 ♖xd2 ♖xe4 21 ♖xe4 ♙xe4 22 ♘g5!, while 16...♖e7 17 ♖f4 leads to a clear advantage for White.

17 e5! ♘c4 18 ♖f4 ♘b2 (D)

Black must accept the challenge as 18...h6 19 ♖f5 g6 20 ♖h3 ♘g7 21 e6 would not improve the situation.

W



As was revealed after the game, this position had been carefully studied in advance by Polugaevsky, who now played the typical sacrifice.

19 ♙xh7+! ♗xh7 20 ♘g5+ ♗g6

The only move. White wins after 20...♗g8 21 ♖h4 ♖e8 22 ♖h7+ ♗f8 23 e6!.

21 h4!!

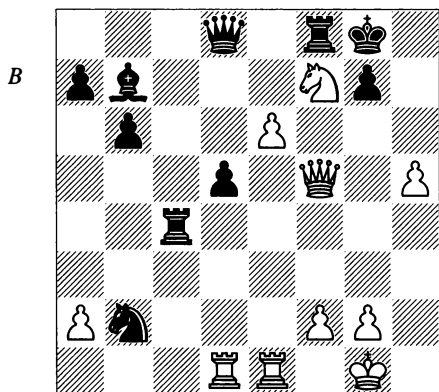
Threatening 22 h5+ ♗xh5 23 g4+ ♗g6 24 ♖f5+ ♗h6 25 ♖h7+ ♗xg5 26 ♖h5+ ♗f4 27 ♖f5#.

21...♖c4!

21...♘xd1? is inadequate due to 22 h5+ ♗h6 23 ♘e6+ 1-0 F.Olafsson-Lombardy, Athens

1969, while other moves also do not help Black: 21...♖d7 22 e6!, 21...f5 22 ♜d4! or 21...f6 22 h5+ ♜xh5 23 g4+ ♜h6 24 ♜h2+.

22 h5+ ♜h6 23 ♜xf7++ ♜h7 24 ♜f5+ ♜g8 25 e6! (D)



This vital point to justify White's play was part of Polugaevsky's deep preparation.

25...♜f6

White was threatening 26 e7 and 26 h6.

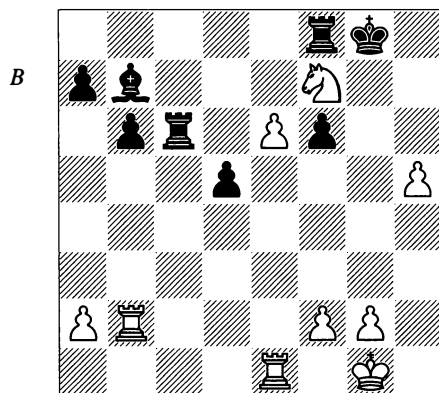
26 ♜xf6 gxf6 27 ♜d2!

27 ♜d6?! ♜xd1 28 e7 ♜c1! is unclear.

27...♜c6!?

Also interesting is 27...♜a4 28 ♜d6, though White of course retains his advantage.

28 ♜xb2 (D)



28...♜e8?

Black's position was highly unpleasant, but he could have set White more problems with 28...♜c8!. White retains a plus with either 29

e7 ♜e8 30 ♜d8 or 29 ♜h6+ ♜h7 30 ♜f5 ♜xe6 31 ♜c1.

29 ♜h6+! ♜h7 30 ♜f5 ♜xe6 31 ♜xe6 ♜xe6 32 ♜c2 ♜c6 33 ♜e2 ♜c8

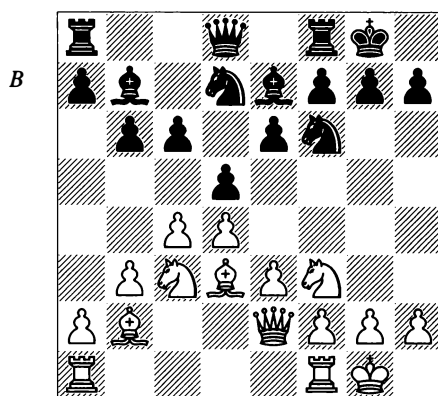
Or 33...♜c7 34 ♜e6.

34 ♜e7+ ♜h8 35 ♜h4 f5 36 ♜g6+ ♜g8 37 ♜xa7 1-0

Grivas – Andersson

European rapid Ch, Athens 1997

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ♜c3 ♜f6 4 e3 e6 5 ♜f3 ♜bd7 6 ♜d3 ♜e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 b3 b6 9 ♜b2 ♜b7 10 ♜e2 (D)



10...♜c8

Black has several other options here:

a) 10...c5 11 cxd5 (or: 11 ♜ad1 ♜c7 12 ♜c1 ♜ad8 13 cxd5 exd5 14 ♜fd1 ± Dreev-Galkin, Russian Ch (Elista) 1996; 11 ♜fd1 ♜c7 12 ♜ac1 ♜ac8 13 ♜e5 ♜fd8 14 cxd5 ♜xe5 15 dxe5 ♜xd5 16 ♜e4 is unclear, Freiman-Belavenets, USSR Ch (Leningrad) 1934) 11...exd5 12 ♜fd1 ♜d6 13 ♜a6 ♜c6 14 ♜ac1 ♜e7 15 ♜b5 ♜b7 16 ♜a6 ♜c6 17 ♜b5 ♜xb5 18 ♜xb5 ♜ad8 19 ♜c2 is slightly better for White, Trifunović-Germek, Bled 1961.

b) 10...dxc4 11 bxc4 c5 12 ♜ad1 cxd4 13 exd4 ♜e8 14 ♜e5 ♜f8 15 f4 with attacking chances for White, Korchnoi-Sisniega, Thessaloniki OL 1988.

c) 10...♜e8 11 ♜e5 ♜xe5 12 dxe5 ♜d7 13 f4 ± Khalifman-Kirov, Leningrad 1989.

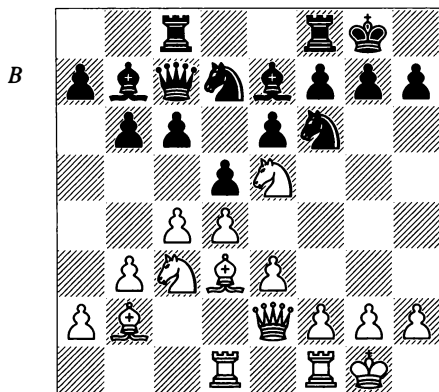
d) 10...♜c7 11 ♜ad1 ♜ad8 12 ♜e5 c5 13 f4 ♜e4 14 ♜b5 ♜b8 15 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 16 ♜xe4

dx4 17 dxc5! and White is better, Nenashev-Serper, Frunze 1988.

11 ♖ad1

The immediate opening of the centre with 11 e4 dx4 12 ♖xe4 ♜c7 13 ♖ad1 is also interesting, as in Marin-Ericque, Benasque 1997.

11 ... ♜c7 12 ♖e5! (D)



12...dxc4!

Black has other options here, though none as satisfactory as the text-move. For example:

a) 12...♖e8?! 13 f4 f5 14 cxd5 exd5 15 g4 with an attack, Pachman-Janturek, Luhačovice 1993.

b) 12...c5 13 cxd5 cxd4 14 exd4 ♖xe5 15 dxe5 ♖xd5 16 ♖b5 ♜b8 17 ♜g4 g6 18 ♜g3 ♜fd8 19 h4 with attacking chances, Uhlmann-Janošević, Sarajevo 1969.

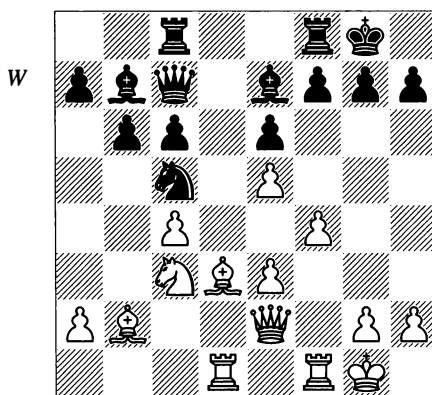
c) 12...♜fd8 13 f4 c5 14 cxd5 ♖xd5 15 ♖xd5 exd5 16 ♖f5 gives White a slight advantage, Atalik-Anastasian, Panormo Z 1998.

d) 12...♖xe5 13 dxe5 ♖d7 14 f4 g6 15 g4 a6 16 h4 with a strong initiative, Krasenkow-Efimov, Cutro 1999.

13 bxc4 ♖xe5 14 dxe5 ♖d7!

14...♖e8 proved inferior in Sanguinetti-Donoso, Fortaleza 1975: 15 ♜h5 g6 16 ♜g4 ♜xe5 17 ♖d5 ♜d6 18 ♖xg6 hxg6 19 ♖f4 ♜b4? 20 ♖xg6 f5 21 ♖xe7+ ♜f7 22 ♖xf5 ♖f6 23 ♜g7+ 1-0, while 14...♜xe5?? loses spectacularly to 15 ♖d5! ♜d6 16 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 17 ♖xh7+. The position contains many hidden dangers and Black must constantly be on the alert.

15 f4 ♖c5 (D)

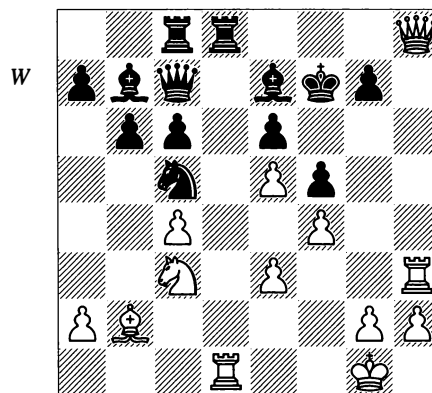


In this interesting position White could opt for 16 ♖b1 with unclear play. The move chosen in the game should lead to a draw by perpetual check and effectively is a 'mechanism' producing only half a point. Naturally, during the game I mistakenly believed that there might be something more.

16 ♖xh7+!? ♜xh7 17 ♜h5+ ♜g8 18 ♜f3 f5!

Black finds the only and easy defence, creating a bolthole on f7.

19 ♜h3 ♜fd8 20 ♜h8+ ♜f7 (D)



21 ♜h5+ ♜g8 22 ♜d6??

Suicidal. White could force perpetual check but instead spent all his remaining time calculating useless variations, trying to extract from the position more than it can offer.

22...♖f8!

The simplest and at the same time most effective move, enabling Black to win the game.

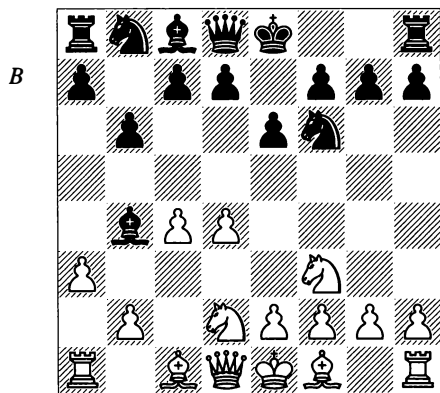
Instead, 22...♙xd6? 23 exd6 ♖xd6 24 ♘d5! cxd5 25 ♖h8+ ♙f7 26 ♖xg7+ would justify White's decision. The rest of the game is of no interest, as Black now has only trivial problems to solve.

23 ♖h7+ ♙f7 24 ♖g3 ♙e8 25 e4 ♖f7 26 ♖g6 ♖xd6 27 exd6 fxe4 28 ♘e2 ♖d8 29 ♙e5 ♙d7 30 ♖f6 ♖e8 31 f5 ♙c8 32 fxe6 ♘xe6 0-1

Grivas – Papandreou

Ikaria 1995

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 ♙b4+ 4 ♘bd2 b6 5 a3 (D)



5...♙e7?

A serious mistake. 5...♙xd2+ is practically forced; for example: 6 ♖xd2 (6 ♙xd2 ♙b7 7 ♙g5 d6 8 e3 h6 9 ♙h4 ♘bd7 10 ♙d3 ♖e7 11 b4 a5 12 0-0 0-0 ± Grivas-Ksieski, Asenovgrad 1985) 6...♙b7 7 e3 0-0 8 ♙e2 ♘e4 9 ♖d3 f5 10 0-0 ♘c6 11 ♘d2 ♖h4 12 f3 ± Grivas-M.Pavlović, Athens 1995.

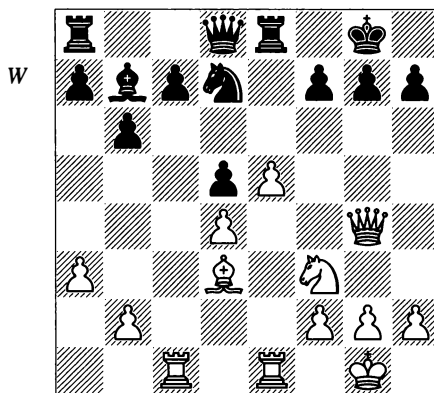
6 e4! d5 7 e5 ♘e4

White is also better after 7...♘fd7 8 cxd5 exd5 9 b4.

8 ♙d3! ♙b7 9 0-0 ♘d7 10 cxd5 exd5 11 ♖e1 ♘g5!?

Black justifiably refrained from 11...♘xd2 12 ♙xd2 0-0 13 ♖c2! h6 (13...g6 14 e6!) 14 ♖c1! intending 15 ♙xh6, when White's attack would be decisive.

12 ♘xg5 ♙xg5 13 ♖g4 0-0 14 ♘f3 ♙xc1 15 ♖axc1 ♖e8 (D)

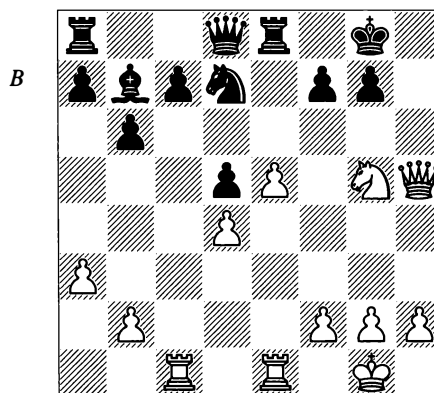


Allowing the classical bishop sacrifice, but it is hard to suggest a decent move anyway, as White's threats are too many and too strong (♘g5 and e6). The conditions for making the sacrifice are excellent as White's pieces are on their best possible posts (bishop on d3, knight on f3, queen on g4, rook on e1 and pawn on e5) while the absence of the black knight from f6 is also significant.

16 ♙xh7+! ♙xh7 17 ♘g5+ ♙g8

Naturally 17...♙g6 18 ♘e6+ is quickly dismissed, while 17...♙h6 18 ♖h4+ ♙g6 19 ♖h7+ ♙xg5 20 ♖c3 would lead to a quick mate.

18 ♖h5 (D)



18...♙c8?!

There is no salvation any more, but 18...♘f8 had to be tried. White then wins with 19 ♖xf7+ ♙h8 20 ♖h5+ ♙g8 21 ♖e3! g6 (21...♙c8 22 ♖f7+ ♙h8 23 ♖xc7 ♖xg5 24 ♖xe8) 22 ♖h6 ♙c8 (22...♖e7 23 ♖h3 ♖g7 24 ♖xg7+ ♙xg7

25 ♖xc7+) 23 ♖c6! ♕e6 (23...♗e7 24 ♖f3! ♗g7 25 ♖xf8+) 24 ♖h3!.

19 ♗xf7+ ♖h8 20 ♗h5+ ♖g8 21 ♗h7+ ♖f8 22 ♗h8+ 1-0

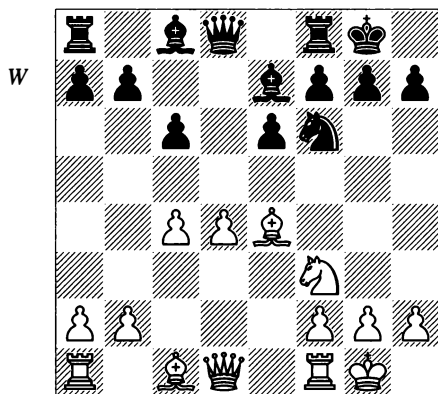
Grivas – A. Kofidis

Athens 1995

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ♖f3 ♖f6 4 ♖c3 e6 5 e3 ♖bd7 6 ♕d3 ♕e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 e4!?

Deviating from the more common 8 b3, which was seen in the game Grivas-Andersson, Athens 1997.

8...dxe4 9 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 10 ♕xe4 ♖f6 (D)



11 ♕c2

11 ♗e2!? ♖xe4 12 ♗xe4 is interesting. White has surrendered the bishop-pair to Black, who will however find it hard to complete his development.

11...b6 12 ♕f4 ♕b7 13 ♗e2 ♗d7!?

An original idea, connecting the black rooks. After 13...c5?! 14 dxc5 ♕xc5 15 ♖ad1 Black faces difficulties.

14 ♖ad1 ♖ad8 15 ♖e5 ♗c8

Black is ready to free his position with the central advance ...c5.

16 ♕g5!? c5 17 dxc5 ♗xc5 18 ♖fe1! a5?

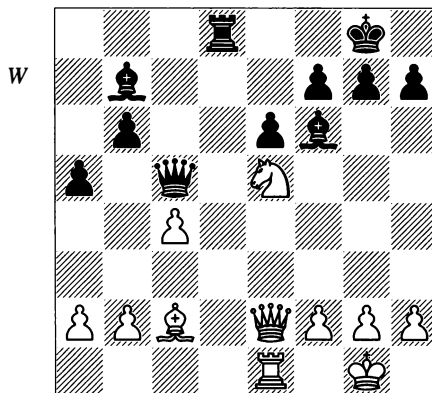
It would also be wrong to play 18...♖xd1? 19 ♖xd1 ♖d8 (19...♖c8 20 ♕xh7+! ♕xh7 21 ♕xf6 ♕xf6 22 ♗h5+ ♖g8 23 ♗xf7+ with a winning position) 20 ♖xd8+ ♕xd8 21 ♗d3! ♗c7 22 ♕xf6 gxf6 (22...♕xf6 is answered by 23 ♖d7!!) 23 ♗xh7+ ♖f8 24 ♗h6+ ♖e7 25 ♖g4 with a clear advantage for White. Instead,

Black had to play 18...♗c7! with only an edge for White.

19 ♖xd8 ♖xd8?

And now forced was 19...♕xd8 20 ♕xf6 ♕xf6 21 ♗d3 g6 22 ♖d7 ♗g5 23 g3!, when White wins an exchange but Black has some chances of survival.

20 ♕xf6 ♕xf6 (D)



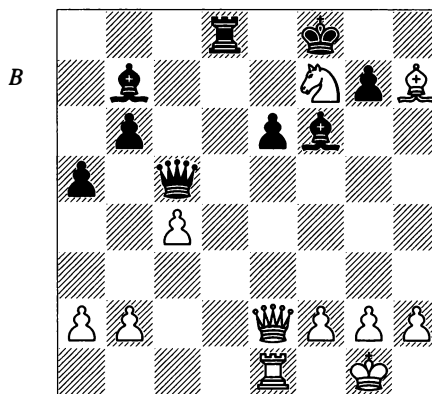
21 ♕xh7+?

White underestimated his position and overlooked the simple 21 ♖xf7! ♖e8 (21...♕xf7? 22 ♗xe6+ ♖f8 23 ♕xh7) 22 ♖e5 with an obvious positional and tactical superiority.

21...♕f8??

An incredible mistake, caused by a mistaken evaluation of the position by Black, who overlooked White's next move. 21...♕xh7 22 ♗h5+ ♖g8 23 ♗xf7+ would lead to a draw by perpetual check and should have been played.

22 ♖xf7!! (D)



22...♖c6

22...♜xf7?? walks into a mate: 23 ♖xe6+ (the idea of 18 ♜fe1!) 23...♜f8 24 ♖g8#.

23 ♙e4! ♜xe4 24 ♖xe4 ♙xe4 25 ♜xd8

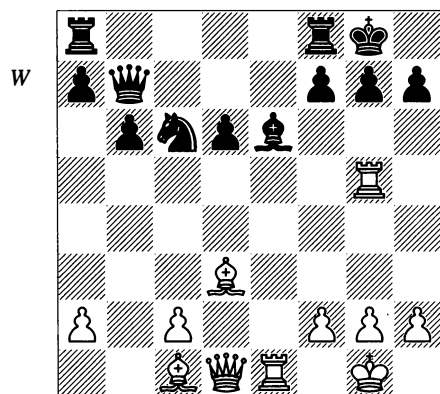
White has won material.

25...♙f5 26 ♜xe6+ ♜f7 27 ♜f4 ♙xb2 28 ♜d1 1-0

Groszpeter – Radulov

Biel 1989

1 d4 d6 2 e4 ♜f6 3 ♜c3 c6 4 ♜f3 ♖a5 5 e5 ♜e4 6 exd6 ♜xc3 7 bxc3 exd6 8 ♙d3 ♙e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖e1 ♙e6 11 ♜b1 b6 12 c4 ♖h5 13 d5 cxd5 14 cxd5 ♖xd5 15 ♜b5 ♖b7 16 ♜g5 ♙xg5 17 ♜xg5 ♜c6? (D)



From the start White showed aggressive intentions and sacrificed a pawn for better development and, in general, the initiative. Black's last move was a serious error, as it allows the classical bishop sacrifice. The absence of the f3-knight is unimportant, as its role is more than adequately taken by the actively placed g5-rook.

18 ♙xh7+! ♜xh7 19 ♖h5+ ♜g8 20 ♜xg7+! ♜xg7 21 ♙h6+ ♜h7 22 ♙g5+ 1-0

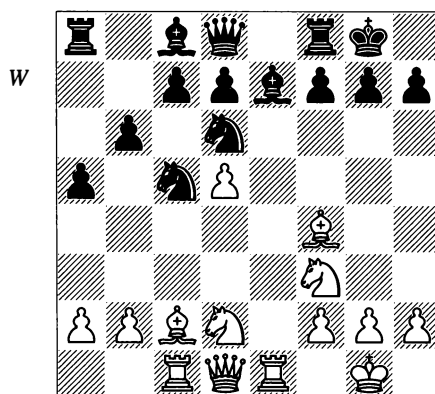
After 22...♜g7 23 ♖h6+ ♜g8 24 ♙f6, Black cannot prevent 25 ♖g7#.

Lanka – Malaniuk

Odessa 1988

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♙b5 ♜f6 4 0-0 ♙c5 5 c3 ♜xe4 6 d4 exd4 7 cxd4 ♙e7 8 d5 ♜d6 9 ♙a4

♜a5 10 ♖e1 0-0 11 ♙f4 b6 12 ♜bd2 ♜ab7 13 ♜c1 ♜c5 14 ♙c2 a5 (D)



White's pieces have occupied excellent positions and he has assumed the initiative. The black king's defence is inadequate, especially taking the absence of the f6-knight into account, and the lack of coordination among the black pieces is obvious. The game continuation is instructive.

15 ♙xh7+! ♜xh7 16 ♜xe7!

With this second consecutive sacrifice White secures control of the g5-square, so as to proceed in the usual way.

16...♖xe7

Black accepts the challenge. 16...♜g8 is also unsatisfactory: 17 ♜g5!! f6 (17...♜e8 18 ♜xe8! and 19 ♖h5) 18 ♖h5 fxg5 19 ♙xg5 (19 ♙xd6? cxd6 20 ♜ce1 ♜e6!) 19...♙a6 (19...♜f5 20 ♜ee1) 20 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 21 ♖h6+! ♜g8 22 ♖g6+ ♜h8 23 ♙xd8 ♜axd8 24 ♜c3.

17 ♜g5+ ♜g6

Black's other option was 17...♜h6 18 ♖g4 f5 19 ♖h3+! ♜g6 20 ♜df3 ♜ce4 21 ♜e5+ ♖xe5 22 ♖h7+ ♜f6 23 ♙xe5+ ♖xe5 24 ♖xg7+ and White wins.

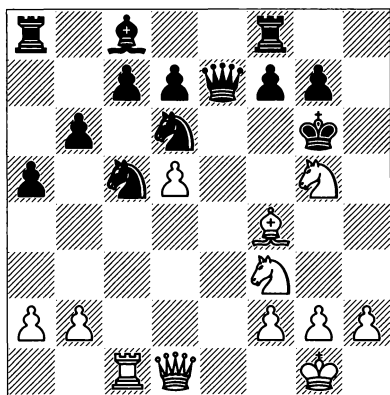
18 ♜df3! (D)

Not 18 ♖g4? f6!.

18...♜h8?

18...f6? 19 ♜h4+ ♜h6 20 ♜e6+! g5 21 ♙xd6 followed by 22 ♜f5+ and 18...♜f5? 19 g4! are no improvement, but Black's best defence is 18...♜e8!, preparing to give up the queen. Then 19 ♜e5+ ♖xe5 20 ♙xe5 ♜xe5 21 f4 ♜e3! 22 ♖g4 f5 is far from clear.

B



19 ♖e5+ ♜f6

Or 19...♜xe5 20 ♙xe5 ♜xg5 21 f4+ ♜f5 22 ♜xc5! bxc5 23 ♜c2+ ♖e4 24 g4+ ♜xg4 25 ♜xe4 d6 26 f5+ ♜h5 27 h3.

20 ♜f3 g6

To 20...♖f5 White replies with 21 ♜xc5! and 22 ♖e4+.

21 ♖c6! 1-0

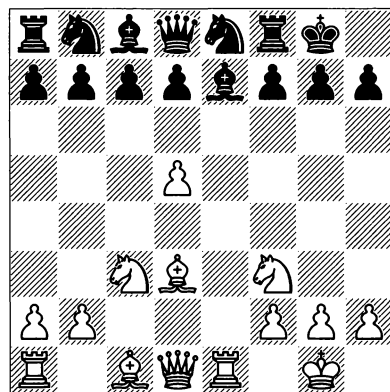
Black resigned due to 21...dxc6 22 ♙xd6+ ♙f5 23 ♜c3+.

B. Stein – Langeweg

European Team Ch, Plovdiv 1983

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♙c4 ♙c5 4 c3 ♖f6 5 d4 exd4 6 0-0 ♖xe4 7 cxd4 ♙e7 8 d5 ♖b8 9 ♙e1 ♖d6 10 ♙d3 0-0 11 ♖c3 ♖e8 (D)

W



The position is almost identical to the previous one in terms of the pawn-skeleton and the placement of the white pieces. White has the

advantage as he has completed his development, in contrast to Black who is restricted to his last two ranks. Particularly striking is the lack of harmony and coordination among the black pieces, especially in comparison to the excellently placed white ones. Consequently it is hardly surprising that White's significant strategic superiority creates the preconditions for combinations.

12 d6! cxd6 13 ♙xh7+! ♜xh7 14 ♜xe7!

White sacrificed his bishop and then eliminated the important e7-bishop, which was preventing the emergence of the f3-knight to g5. Black should now have declined all sacrifices and continued 14...♖f6 15 ♜xd6, albeit with a large advantage for White.

14...♜xe7 15 ♖d5! 1-0

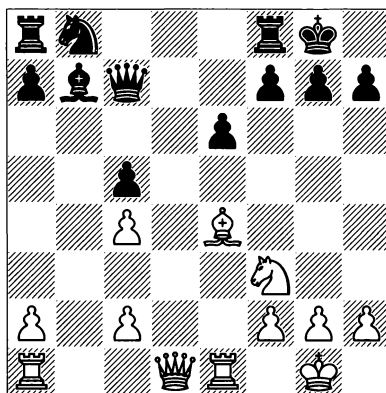
After 15...♜d8 (only move) 16 ♖g5+ ♜g6 (16...♜g8 17 ♜h5 or 16...♜h6 17 ♖xf7++) 17 ♖f4+! there is no salvation.

Reeh – A. Hoffmann

Biel 1986

1 d4 e6 2 ♖f3 b6 3 e4 d5 4 ♙d3 ♖f6 5 ♙g5 ♙e7 6 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♖c3 c5 9 dxc5 ♙xc3 10 bxc3 bxc5 11 exd5 ♜xd5 12 c4 ♜c6 13 ♙e1 ♙b7 14 ♙e4 ♜c7 (D)

W



White is obliged to play for the attack as his pawn-structure is significantly inferior. The absence of pieces around Black's castled king, in conjunction with the easy transfer of white pieces into the attack, must be sufficient reason to prompt the bishop sacrifice.

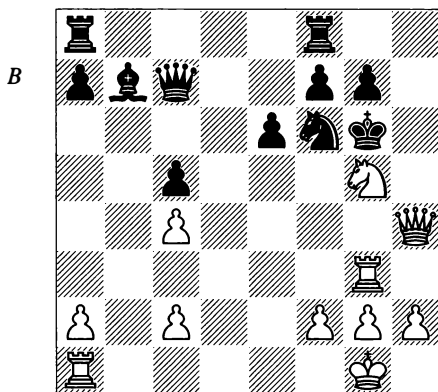
15 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 16 ♜g5+ ♖h6

Black's other options would also not save the game: 16...♗g8 17 ♖h5 ♜c8 18 ♖h7+ ♔f8 19 ♖ad1! ♜d7 20 ♖h8+ ♔e7 21 ♖xe6+ or 16...♗g6 17 ♖g4 f5 18 ♖h4! e5 19 ♜e6 ♖d6 20 ♖g5+ ♔f7 21 ♖xg7+ ♔xe6 22 ♖ad1.

17 ♖g4 ♜d7 18 ♖e3!

New forces join the attack!

18...♜f6 19 ♖h4+ ♔g6 20 ♖g3 (D)

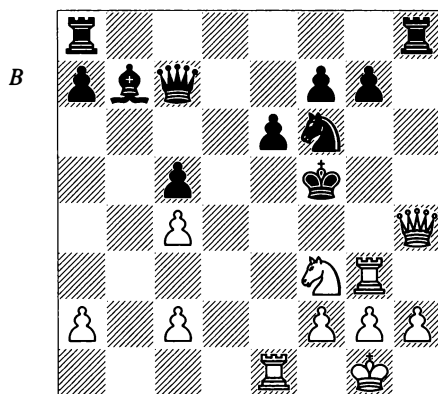


The black knight has assumed a defensive post near its king, but the white pieces are already outnumbering Black's forces and there are multiple threats. The black king is forced to seek salvation on the other flank.

20...♔f5 21 ♖e1!

The last remaining white piece arrives, cutting off the black king's escape-route.

21...♖h8 22 ♜f3! (D)



22...♜e4

The acceptance of the queen sacrifice would lead to mate: 22...♖xh4 23 ♖g5+ ♔f4 24 g3+ ♔xf3 25 ♖e3#.

23 ♖g4+ ♔f6 24 ♖xe4! ♔e7

Or 24...♖xe4 25 ♖g5#. White has recovered the sacrificed material without his attack losing its force, as the rest of the game proves.

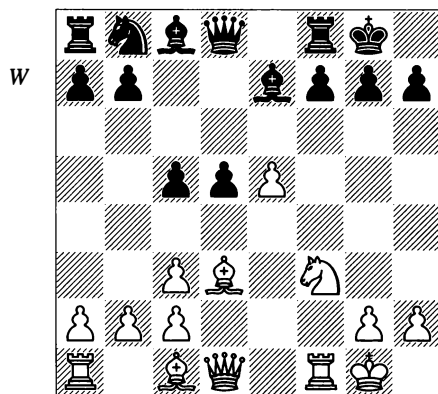
25 ♖xe6+! fxe6 26 ♖xg7+ ♔d6 27 ♖e5+ ♔c6 28 ♖xe6+ ♖d6 29 ♜e5+! 1-0

Pinkas – Gizelak

Poland 1973

1 e4 e5 2 ♜c3 ♜f6 3 f4 d5 4 fxe5 ♜xe4 5 ♜f3 c5 6 ♖d3 ♜xc3 7 dxc3 ♖e7 8 0-0 0-0 (D)

Black correctly allowed the possibility of the bishop sacrifice. He could of course have played 8...c4!? with a double-edged position.



9 ♖xh7+!?

This sacrifice only leads to a draw.

9...♔xh7 10 ♜g5+ ♖xg5

Forced, as 10...♔g8? 11 ♖h5 ♖xg5 12 ♖xg5 ♖d7 (12...♖e8 13 ♖f6!) 13 ♖f4! would be fatal.

11 ♖h5+ ♖h6 12 ♖f6! ♜d7 13 ♖xh6+ gxxh6 14 ♖xh6?

It was time for White to agree to the draw after 14 ♖xh6+ ♔g8 15 ♖g5 f6 16 ♖g6+. Unfortunately, since his 9th move he had overestimated his position.

14...♖e8??

A serious blunder with fatal consequences. After 14...♖h8! 15 ♖f1 ♜xe5 16 ♖xe5 ♔xh6 17 ♖f6+ ♔g7 18 ♖d6+ f6 19 ♖g3+ ♔f7 20

♙xd8 ♜xd8 Black's material superiority would be indisputable.

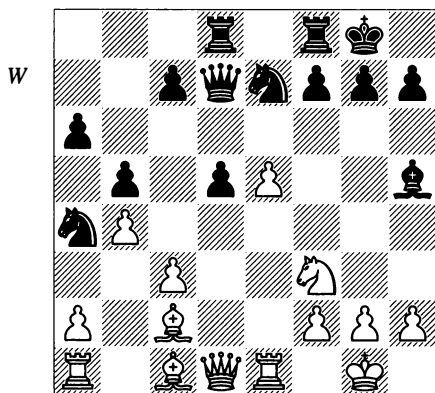
15 ♖g5+! ♜g8 16 ♖f6!! ♜xf6 17 ♜g5+! ♜h8 18 exf6 1-0

Hübner – Korchnoi

Tilburg 1987

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜xe4 6 d4 b5 7 ♖b3 d5 8 dxe5 ♖e6 9 ♜bd2 ♜c5 10 c3 ♖e7 11 ♖c2 ♖g4 12 ♞e1 ♜d7 13 ♜f1 ♞d8 14 ♜e3 ♖h5 15 ♜f5 0-0 16 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 17 b4 ♜a4?? (D)

A serious mistake by Black. The only real option was 17...♜e4! 18 ♖xe4 dxe4 19 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 20 ♜g5 ♖g6 with a satisfactory game for Black, as in A.Sokolov-Korchnoi, Tilburg 1987.



18 ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 19 e6!

An important *zwischenzug*, destroying the communication between the black pieces. After 19...fxe6 (19...♖xf3 20 ♜d3+! ♖e4 21 ♜h3+) 20 ♜g5+ ♜g6 21 g4! Black's position is ruined and his king will never find a shelter.

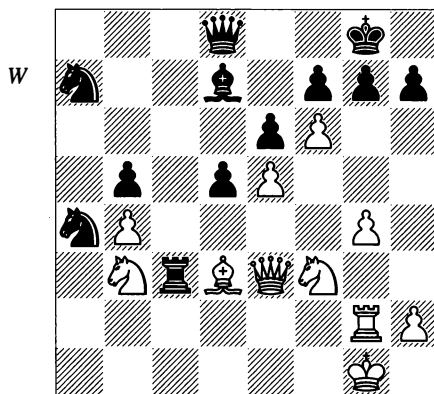
1-0

Kengis – Wilder

Chicago 1989

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜f3 e6 3 g3 b5 4 ♖g2 ♖b7 5 ♖g5 ♖e7 6 0-0-0 7 ♜d3 a6 8 ♜bd2 ♜c6 9 c3 d6 10 a4 ♞b8 11 axb5 axb5 12 ♜e1 ♜d7 13 ♖xe7 ♜xe7 14 e4 c5 15 ♜c2 ♜b6 16 dxc5 ♜xc5 17 ♜e3 ♜c7 18 ♜d4 ♜d7 19 b4 ♜a4 20 ♖h3 ♖a8

21 ♞fc1 d5 22 e5 ♜c6 23 ♜b3 ♞fc8 24 ♖f1 ♜a7 25 f4 ♞c7 26 ♞a2 ♜c8 27 ♞ac2 ♖c6 28 g4 ♖d7 29 ♖d3 ♜d8 30 f5 ♜h4 31 ♖g2 ♞bc8 32 ♜f3 ♜d8 33 f6 ♞xc3 34 ♞xc3 ♞xc3 (D)



35 ♖xh7+!!

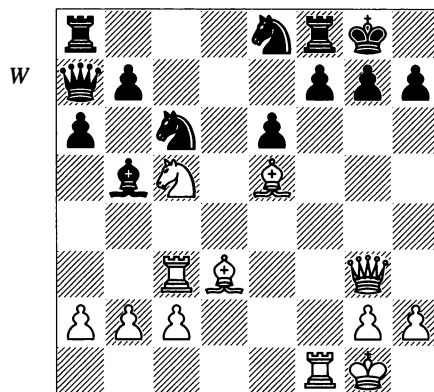
A direct solution in a complicated position, in which White had to act swiftly. Black resigned as 35...♜xh7 36 ♜g5! ♜h8 37 ♞g3! ♜g8 38 ♞h3! would be decisive.

1-0

Ljubojević – Andersson

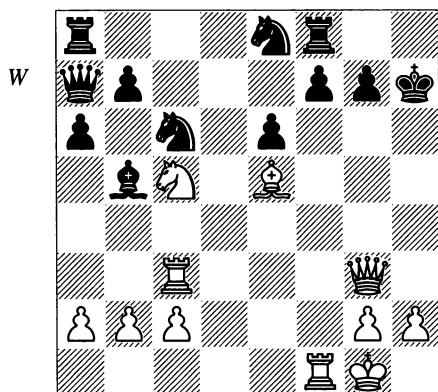
Wijk aan Zee 1976

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜c6 5 ♜c3 ♜c7 6 ♖e2 a6 7 0-0 ♜f6 8 ♖e3 ♖e7 9 f4 d6 10 ♜e1 0-0 11 ♜g3 ♖d7 12 e5 dxe5 13 fxe5 ♜xe5 14 ♖f4 ♖d6 15 ♞ad1 ♜b8 16 ♞d3 ♜e8 17 ♜e4 ♖c7 18 ♞c3 ♜c6 19 ♖xc7 ♜xd4 20 ♖d3 ♜a7 21 ♜c5 ♖b5 22 ♖e5 ♜c6 (D)



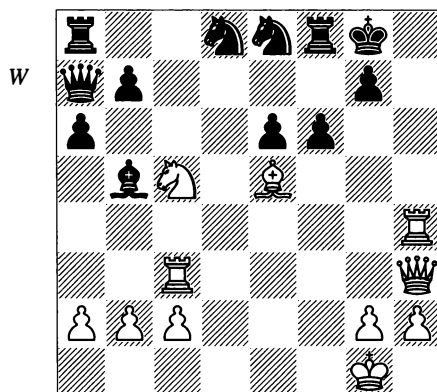
White has treated the opening imaginatively, but should now force a draw.

23 ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 (D)



25 ♖h4+ ♜g8 26 ♜h3 ♜d8 (D)

Not, of course, 26...♜xe5? 27 ♖h8+ ♜f7 28 ♜xe6+ with mate to follow.



24 ♖f4?

24 ♖xg7! ♜xg7 25 ♜xg7+!! ♜xg7 26 ♖g3+ is objectively correct, with perpetual check.

24...f6?

Black could have obtained the advantage with 24...♜xe5! 25 ♖h4+ ♜g8 26 ♜xe5 ♜b6! 27 a4! (27 ♖ch3 f6 28 ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 29 ♜xe6 and now 29...♜f7! or 29...♜d7 with advantage) 27...♜xa4! 28 ♖xa4 ♜xb2! or with 24...f5! 25 a4! ♜xe5 26 ♖h4+ ♜g8 27 ♜xe5 ♜d7!.

27 ♜d4! b6 28 ♜xe6 ♜xe6 29 ♜xe6+ ♜f7 30 ♜e4! g5??

A fatal mistake. A draw by perpetual check would result from 30...♜xa2! 31 ♜h7+! (but not 31 ♜xa8? ♜b1+ 32 ♜f2 ♜f1+ 33 ♜g3 ♜e1+ 34 ♜f2 ♜e5+ 35 ♜h3 ♜e6+! 36 ♜g3 g5! with advantage for Black). Now, however, White wins easily.

31 ♖h6 ♖a7 32 ♖ch3 ♜g7 33 ♖g6 ♖ff7 34 c4! 1-0

Double Bishop Sacrifice

The double bishop sacrifice is considered to be one of the most dangerous combinative ideas, the aim of it being the total destruction of the opponent's castled position. More specifically, the double consecutive sacrifice on the squares g7 and h7 (or g2 and h2) breaks up the enemy king's shield and exposes it, so that the attacking pieces can act effectively against it.

The word 'effectively' refers to the following goals:

- 1) Checkmate.
- 2) Material gain.
- 3) Draw by perpetual check.

The double bishop sacrifice is rarely met in practice, but it can be a very effective weapon in the hands of an experienced chess-player.

What are the requirements for the side wishing to employ the double bishop sacrifice?

- 1) The presence of two bishops on the diagonals b1-h7 and a1-h8 (b8-h2 and a8-h1).
- 2) The inadequate protection of the enemy king, especially the absence of a knight from f6 (or f3 for White).
- 3) The actual possibility to sacrifice the two bishops.
- 4) The possibility of the queen coming immediately to the h-file.
- 5) The presence of the enemy rook on f8 (f1) so as to prevent the immediate escape of the enemy king.
- 6) The possibility to reinforce the attack (after the sacrifice) with the participation of more pieces.

Usually, the presence of a pawn on f4 (f5) is important, though not entirely necessary for the success of the sacrifice.

The failure of the sacrifice can be determined in the following ways:

- 1) The material won is less than that sacrificed.

2) The sacrifice of the second bishop is declined.

3) In the variations calculated there is a serious error, changing the evaluation of the position.

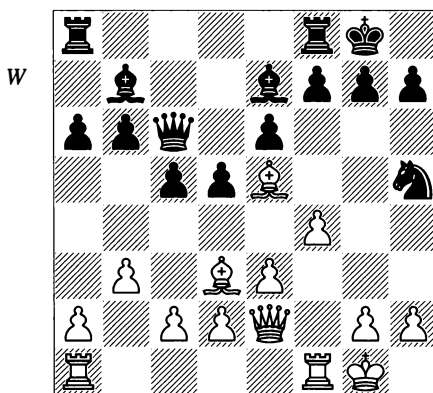
4) Our evaluation of the resulting position is mistaken, either materially or positionally.

The double bishop sacrifice first occurred in a famous game by Emanuel Lasker in 1889. For this reason it is also known as 'Lasker's sacrifice'. This game left a great impression and appears in many books on combinations.

Em. Lasker – Bauer

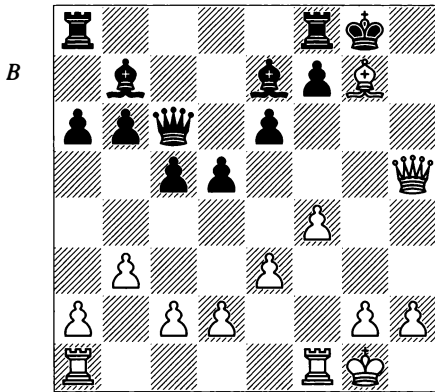
Amsterdam 1889

1 f4 d5 2 e3 ♘f6 3 b3 e6 4 ♖b2 ♙e7 5 ♙d3 b6
6 ♘f3 ♙b7 7 ♘c3 ♘bd7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♘e2 c5 10
♘g3 ♚c7 11 ♘e5 ♘xe5 12 ♙xe5 ♚c6 13 ♚e2
a6 14 ♘h5 ♘xh5 (D)



In this position Emanuel Lasker, to the great surprise of the spectators and his opponent, did not proceed with the expected 15 ♚xh5 but with the double bishop sacrifice, which finally found its place in the pantheon of standard combinations.

15 ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 16 ♜xh5+ ♔g8 17 ♖xg7!
(D)



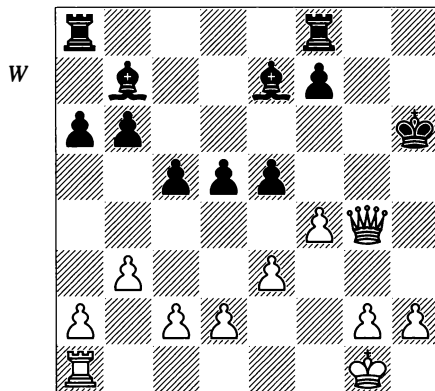
17...♜xg7

Black's alternatives were hopeless: White wins immediate in the case of 17...f6 18 ♖h6! or 17...f5 18 ♖e5! ♜f6 19 ♜f3.

18 ♜g4+ ♜h7 19 ♜f3 e5

Black has found the only way to prevent mate. For the queen Black will have two rooks and a bishop, enough material to make him satisfied. However, Lasker's combination had not reached its conclusion yet!

20 ♜h3+ ♜h6 21 ♜xh6+ ♜xh6 (D)



22 ♜d7!

Without this move, which wins material and had been foreseen before the sacrifice, Lasker's combination would not bear fruit. Black played on for several moves, obviously trying to recover from the heavy blow!

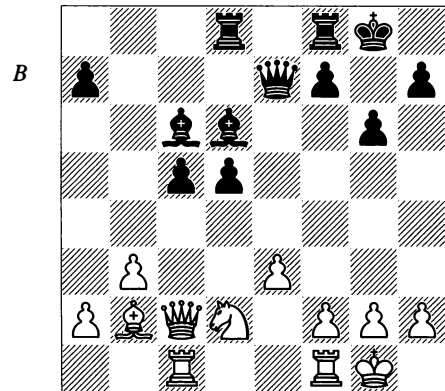
22...♖f6 23 ♜xb7 ♜g7 24 ♜f1 ♜ab8 25 ♜d7 ♜fd8 26 ♜g4+ ♜f8 27 fxe5 ♖g7 28 e6 ♜b7 29 ♜g6 f6 30 ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 31 ♜xf6+ ♜e8 32 ♜h8+ ♜e7 33 ♜g7+ ♜xe6 34 ♜xb7 ♜d6 35 ♜xa6 d4 36 exd4 cxd4 37 h4 d3 38 ♜xd3 1-0

The years went by and Lasker's combination was almost forgotten until, 25 years later in St Petersburg, the possibility of employing it was offered to one of the strongest tactical players of that time, Dr Siegbert Tarrasch.

Nimzowitsch – Tarrasch

St Petersburg 1914

1 d4 d5 2 ♖f3 c5 3 c4 e6 4 e3 ♖f6 5 ♖d3 ♖c6 6 0-0 ♖d6 7 b3 0-0 8 ♖b2 b6 9 ♖bd2 ♖b7 10 ♜c1 ♜e7 11 cxd5 exd5 12 ♖h4 g6 13 ♖hf3 ♜ad8 14 dxc5 bxc5 15 ♖b5 ♖e4 16 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 17 ♜c2 ♖xd2 18 ♖xd2 (D)



18...d4! 19 exd4 ♖xh2+! 20 ♜xh2 ♜h4+ 21 ♜gl ♖xg2! 22 f3

White's best defensive try. After 22 ♜xg2 ♜g4+ 23 ♜h1 ♜d5 24 ♜xc5 ♜h5+ 25 ♜xh5 ♜xh5+ 26 ♜g2 ♜g5+ Black wins easily.

22...♜fe8!

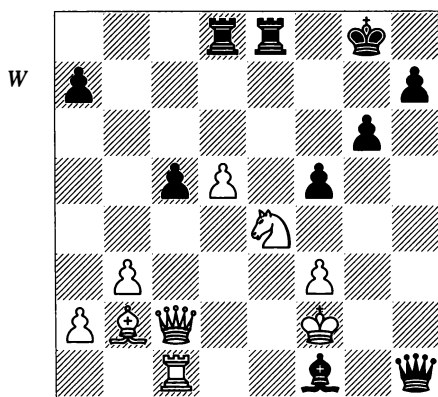
A strong move, threatening 23...♜e2, that had to be foreseen.

23 ♖e4

23 ♜d3 leads to mate: 23...♜g3 24 ♖e4 ♜xe4 25 fxe4 ♖f3#.

23...♜h1+ 24 ♖f2 ♖xf1 25 d5 f5! (D)

Black proceeds with great accuracy, meeting White's threats on the long a1-h8 diagonal.



26 ♖c3 ♗g2+ 27 ♜e3 ♗xe4+ 28 fxe4 f4+

Mate would result also from 28...♗g3+ 29 ♜d2 ♗f2+ 30 ♜d1 ♗e2#.

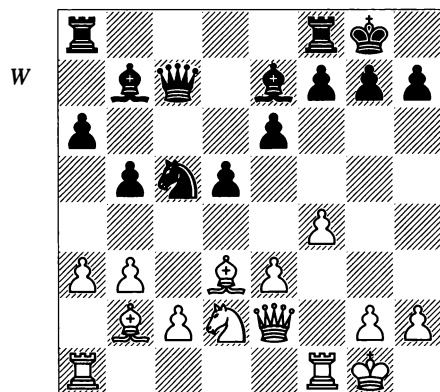
29 ♜xf4 ♗f8+ 30 ♜e5 ♗h2+ 31 ♜e6 ♗e8+ 32 ♜d7 ♜b5# (0-1)

Thus the sacrifice proved timeless and not just one of the many miscellaneous combinations we meet in chess. The sacrifice could now be categorized and its requirements established.

Filatov – Mayer

Philadelphia 2000

1 d4 d5 2 ♘f3 ♘f6 3 e3 e6 4 ♜d3 c5 5 b3 ♜e7 6 ♜b2 ♘bd7 7 ♘bd2 b6 8 0-0 ♜b7 9 ♗e2 0-0 10 ♘e5 ♗c7 11 a3 a6 12 f4 b5 13 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 14 dxc5 ♘xc5? (D)



15 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 16 ♗h5+ ♜g8 17 ♜xg7! ♜xg7

Black is not saved by declining the sacrifice either: 17...f6 18 ♗g6! (threatening 19 ♜xf6#) 18...♗f7 19 ♜h6+ ♜h8 20 ♗xf7.

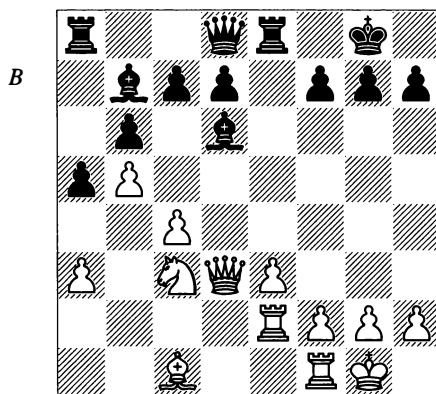
18 ♗g4+ 1-0

After 18...♜h7 19 ♗f3, mate is imminent, while 18...♜f6 19 ♗g5# is even quicker.

Gamboa – Blatny

New York 1996

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e5 3 dxe5 ♘g4 4 ♘f3 ♜c5 5 e3 ♘c6 6 ♘c3 0-0 7 ♜d3 ♗e8 8 a3 ♘gxe5 9 b4 ♘xf3+ 10 ♗xf3 ♘e5 11 ♗e2 ♘xd3+ 12 ♗xd3 ♜d6 13 0-0 b6 14 ♗a2 a5 15 b5 ♜b7 16 ♗e2 (D)



White has treated the opening in an original but hardly effective way. As a result, Black's position is attractive thanks to the two bishops and his attacking possibilities on the kingside. Thus, the sacrifice that followed was hardly unexpected.

16...♜xh2+! 17 ♜xh2 ♗h4+ 18 ♜g1 ♜xg2! 19 ♜xg2

Naturally, 19 f3 ♗h1+ 20 ♜f2 ♗xf1+ is easy for Black.

19...♗g4+ 20 ♜h2

In the double bishop sacrifice it is particularly important for the defender to choose the right square for his king. The general rule indicates the placement of the king on h1 (h8), so as to be able to place a piece in front of it. Here White had no choice, as 20 ♜h1 ♗f3+ 21 ♜g1 ♗e6 threatens the decisive 22...♜h6.

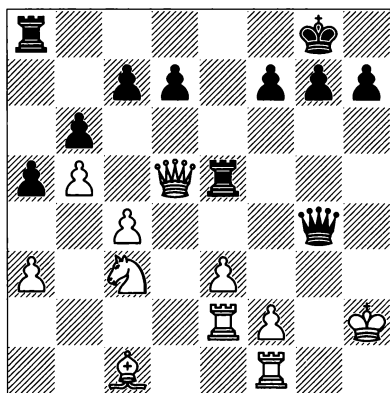
20...♗e5 21 ♗d5! (D)

G. Kuzmin – Sveshnikov

USSR Ch, Moscow 1973

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘c6 5 ♘c3 ♖c7 6 ♙e2 a6 7 0-0 ♘f6 8 ♙e3 ♙b4 9 ♘xc6 bxc6 10 ♘a4 0-0 11 c4 ♙d6 12 f4 ♘xe4 13 ♙d3 ♘f6 14 c5 ♙e7 15 ♙d4 ♘d5 (D)

B



The only defence against mate.

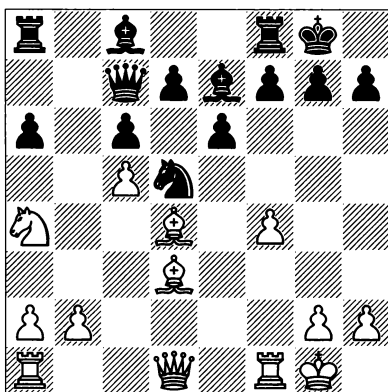
21... ♖h5+! 22 ♙g1 ♙g5+ 23 ♖xg5 ♖xg5+

24 ♘h1

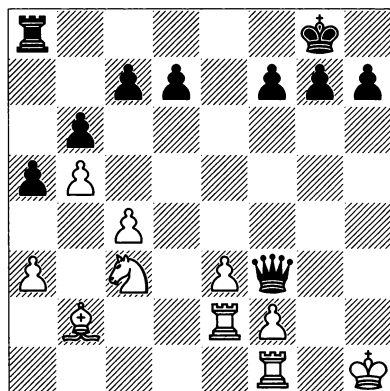
24 ♘h2 loses immediately to 24... ♖e5+!

24... ♖f6! 25 ♙b2 ♖f3+ (D)

W



W



26 ♙g1

White had to try 26 ♘h2 ♙e8 27 ♙g1 ♙e6 28 ♙g2! ♙d6!, when Black threatens 29... ♖h5+ 30 ♘g1 ♙d1+ 31 ♘xd1 ♖xe2 winning. White has several moves at his disposal, but all of them lose; for example:

a) 29 ♙e1 ♙d2 30 ♙a1 ♙xf2 31 ♙xf2 (31 ♙eg1 ♖h5+ 32 ♘g3 ♙f3#) 31... ♖xf2+.

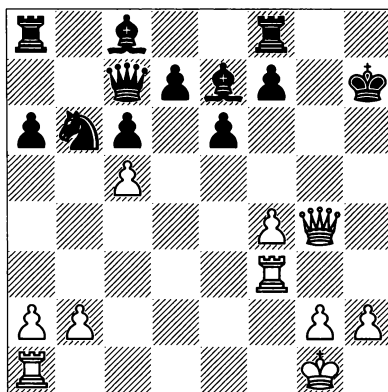
b) 29 ♙c2 ♙g6! 30 ♙xg6 ♖h5+ 31 ♘g3 ♖xg6+.

c) 29 ♙a1 ♙h6+ 30 ♘g1 ♖h3 31 f3 ♖h1+.

26... ♙e8 27 ♙d2 ♙g4+! 28 ♘h1 ♙e6 29 f3 ♖h3+ 0-1

White resigned in view of 30 ♘g1 ♙g6+ 31 ♘f2 ♙g2+ 32 ♘e1 ♙xd2 33 ♘xd2 ♖xf1.

B



The double bishop sacrifice is in the air but Black has a defence, as the d5-knight can protect the king by returning to f6. Therefore, a little 'prelude' is required before the main events.

16 ♘b6! ♘xb6 17 ♙xh7+! ♘xh7 18 ♖h5+ ♘g8 19 ♙xg7! ♘xg7

After 19... f6 or 19... f5, 20 ♖g6 is decisive.

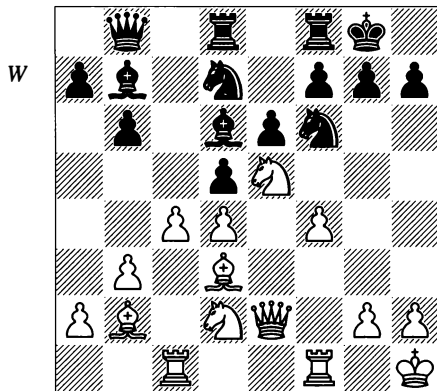
20 ♖g4+ ♘h7 21 ♙f3 (D)

If White had not included 16 ♘b6! ♘xb6, then Black would be able to defend here with 20... ♘xf4!.

21... ♙xc5+ 22 ♘h1 1-0

Tataev – V. Milov*Novi Sad 1989*

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ♘f3 ♙f6 4 e3 e6 5 ♙bd2
 ♙bd7 6 ♙d3 c5 7 0-0 cxd4 8 exd4 ♙e7 9 b3
 0-0 10 ♙b2 b6 11 ♖e2 ♙b7 12 ♙ad1 ♙c8 13
 ♙e5 ♖c7 14 f4 ♙cd8 15 ♙h1 ♙d6 16 ♙c1
 ♖b8 (D)

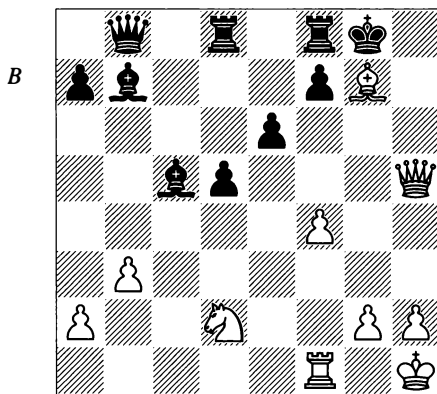


White sensed the presence of preconditions for the double bishop sacrifice and employed it after a sequence of forcing preparatory moves.

17 ♙xd7! ♙xd7 18 c5!

White removed the knight from f6 and now opens the a1-h8 diagonal. Black has no choice as 19 c6 is threatened.

18...bxc5 19 dxc5 ♙xc5 20 ♙xc5! ♙xc5 21 ♙xh7+! ♙xh7 22 ♖h5+ ♙g8 23 ♙xg7! (D)



23...f6

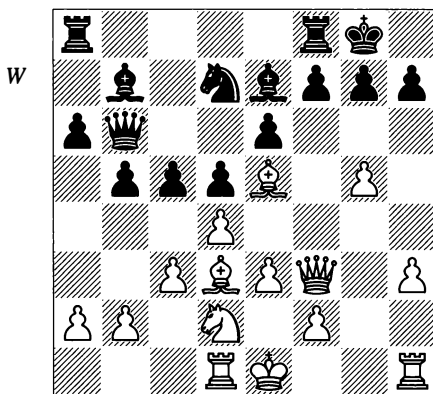
Black is mated if he accepts the second sacrifice: 23...♙xg7 24 ♖g5+ ♙h7 25 ♙f3.

24 ♖g6! ♙f7 25 ♙h6+ ♙h8 26 ♖xf7 ♙g8 27 ♙f3! 1-0

The threatened mate by 28 ♙g7+! ♙xg7 29 ♙h3+ cannot be averted. An impressive game!

Bruno – Stull*Lienz 1983*

1 d4 ♙f6 2 ♙f3 e6 3 ♙f4 b6 4 e3 ♙b7 5 ♙bd2
 ♙e7 6 h3 0-0 7 c3 c5 8 ♙d3 d5 9 ♙e5 ♙bd7 10
 ♖f3 a6 11 g4 b5 12 ♙d1 ♖b6 13 g5 ♙xe5 14
 ♙xe5 ♙d7 (D)



White's position seems critical as Black's threat of 15...♙xe5 is powerful. However, the continuation is well known...

15 ♙xh7+! ♙xh7 16 ♖h5+ ♙g8 17 ♙xg7 ♙xg7

In case of 17...f5, 18 ♖g6! decides.

18 ♖h6+ ♙g8 19 g6 ♙f6

Or 19...fxg6 20 ♖xg6+ ♙h8 21 ♙g1! with multiple mating threats (22 ♖h6#, 22 ♖h5# and 22 ♖g7#).

20 ♙f3! ♙f6

There is no salvation with 20...fxg6 21 ♙g1! either.

21 ♙e5! 1-0

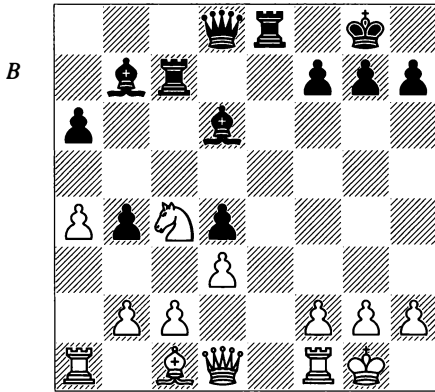
Kirillov – Furman*Vilnius 1949*

1 e4 e5 2 ♙f3 ♙c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♙f6 5 ♖e2
 b5 6 ♙b3 ♙e7 7 a4 b4 8 ♙d5 ♙xd5 9 exd5

♟d4 10 ♜xd4 exd4 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♖c4 c5 13 dxc6 dxc6 14 ♖xc6 ♖a7 15 ♖f3 ♖c7 16 d3 ♙b7 17 ♖d1 ♙d6

White has wasted precious time to win material, to the detriment of his development and harmonious placement of his pieces. Naturally, this policy cannot be applauded, but as White's disadvantage is of a short-term nature, Black's response must be immediate.

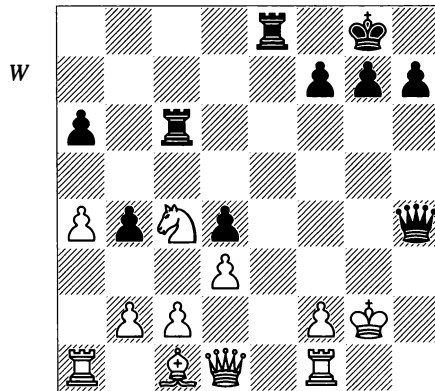
18 ♜d2 ♖e8! 19 ♜c4 (D)



19...♙xh2+! 20 ♙xh2 ♖h4+ 21 ♙g1 ♙xg2! 22 ♙xg2

White could not play 22 f3 ♖h1+ (22...♖g3 23 ♙f4!) 23 ♙f2 ♙xf1 24 ♖xf1 ♖h2+ 25 ♖g2 ♖e2+!.

22...♖c6! (D)



23 ♙f4

White's alternative defensive option was also hopeless: 23 ♖f3 ♖g6+ 24 ♖g3 ♖e2! 25 ♖xg6

fxg6! 26 ♙d2 ♖xd2 27 ♜xd2 ♖g5+ and Black wins.

23...♖xf4 24 ♖h1 ♖f6!! 25 ♖h2

White could not save himself with either 25 f3 ♖g6+ 26 ♙f1 ♖g3! or 25 ♖d2 ♖g6+ 26 ♙f1 ♖g4!.

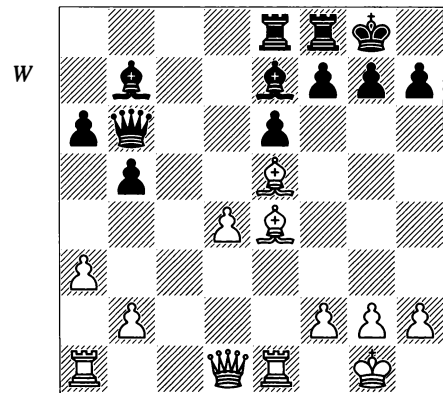
25...♖g6+ 0-1

White resigned in view of 26 ♙h1 ♖e1+!! 27 ♖xe1 ♖f3+.

O'Kelly – Palacios

Malaga 1965

1 c4 c5 2 ♜f3 ♜f6 3 ♜c3 e6 4 e3 ♜c6 5 d4 d5 6 cxd5 ♜xd5 7 ♙d3 cxd4 8 exd4 ♙e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 a3 a6 11 ♖e1 b5 12 ♜xd5 ♖xd5 13 ♙e4 ♖d6 14 ♜e5 ♙b7 15 ♙f4 ♖ae8 16 ♙g3 ♜xe5 17 ♙xe5 ♖b6 (D)



The Belgian grandmaster did not resist the temptation of the double bishop sacrifice, but in this particular case that was not the correct decision.

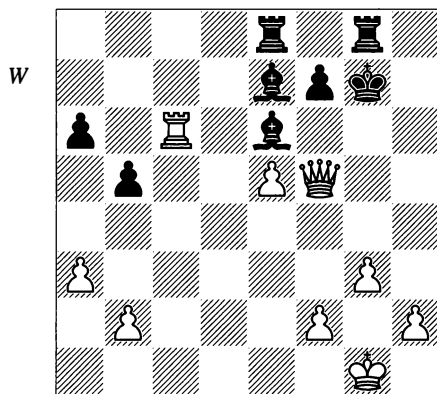
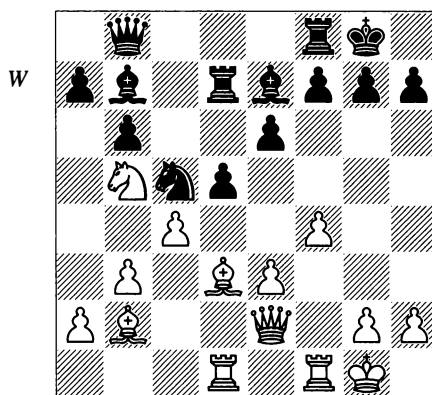
18 ♙xh7+? ♙xh7 19 ♖h5+ ♙g8 20 ♙xg7 ♙xg7 21 ♖g4+ ♙h7?

Black continued automatically, choosing to give up his queen. The real test of the sacrifice is the brave 21...♙f6!, as the b7-bishop controls the important f3-square. White could then opt for 22 ♖h4+ ♙g6 23 ♖g4+, seeking perpetual check, but Black can play on by 23...♙g5! 24 h4 ♖d8, with an extra piece and a safe king. White's other serious try is 22 ♖e3 ♖h8! 23 ♖g3 e5 (forced in view of 23...♖eg8 24 ♖f4#) 24 dxe5+ ♙xe5!. The position is then not wholly

clear, as no win for White is apparent but Black is too exposed to be assured of victory. A possible continuation is 25 ♖e1+ (25 ♖d1 ♗e4!) 25...♗d6 26 ♖f4+ ♗d7 27 ♖d1+ ♗c8 28 ♖c3+ ♗c5 29 b4 ♖h5.

In the game White is allowed to win the black queen effortlessly and, thanks to the mobility and activity of his own queen, achieve victory safely.

22 ♖e3 e5 23 ♖h3+ ♖h6 24 ♖f5+ ♗g7 25 ♖xh6 ♗xh6 26 dxe5 ♖g8 27 g3 ♗d5 28 ♖c1 ♗e6 29 ♖c6 ♗g7 (D)



30 ♖xe6!

The white queen will work harmoniously together with the four connected passed pawns, creating a powerful force.

30...f6 31 ♖xe6 ♖g8 32 ♖d7 ♗f7 33 f4 ♖d8 34 ♖f5+ ♗g7 35 ♖g4+ ♗f7 36 f5 ♗c5+ 37 ♗f1 ♖d4 38 ♖g6+ ♗e7 39 b4 1-0

Junge – Kottbauer

Prague 1942

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♗c3 c6 4 e3 ♗d7 5 ♗d3 ♗g6 6 ♗f3 ♗e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 b3 b6 9 ♗b2 ♗b7 10 ♖e2 c5 11 ♖ad1 ♖c7 12 ♗e5 ♖ad8 13 f4 ♗e4 14 ♗b5 ♖b8 15 ♗xd7 ♖xd7 16 dxc5 ♗xc5 (D)

17 ♗xh7+!? ♗xh7 18 ♖h5+ ♗g8 19 ♗xg7 f5??

The refusal of the second sacrifice is always an option for the defending side, who already has an extra piece for two pawns and thus an exchange of the second bishop for the f8-rook

would not leave this side at a material disadvantage, while the attack would burn out. In the game Black had to choose between three moves: 19...f5, 19...f6 and 19...♗xg7. The first one loses simply, but the other two lead to complicated positions where White, although seemingly able to force a win, must tread very carefully and handle the position with great accuracy:

a) 19...f6 20 ♗h6 (20 ♖g6? ♖e8 21 ♖h6 dxc4! is unclear; e.g., 22 ♖h8+ ♗f7 23 ♖h7 ♗e4!) 20...♗d6 21 b4! ♗e4 22 cxd5 ♗xd5 (or 22...♖fd8 23 dxe6) 23 ♖xd5! exd5 24 ♖g4+ ♗h7 25 ♖xd7+ ♗xh6 26 ♖f3 with a winning attack.

b) 19...♗xg7 20 ♖g4+ ♗g5! 21 ♖xg5+ ♗h8 22 ♖h6+ (22 ♖f3? f6 23 ♖h3+ ♖h7! or 22 ♖f6+? ♗g8 23 ♖f3 ♗e4!) 22...♗g8 23 ♖f3 f6 24 ♖g3+ ♗f7 25 b4! ♗a6 (25...♗e4? 26 ♖g7+ ♗e8 27 ♖xd7 ♗xd7 28 ♖g7+ ♗e8 {28...♗c6 29 ♖e7! e5 30 ♗d4+! exd4 31 b5#}) 29 ♗c7+ ♗d8 30 ♗xe6+ 26 e4! with a strong attack.

20 ♗e5!

A simple double threat (21 ♗xb8 and 21 ♖g6#), after which the game reaches a prosaic conclusion.

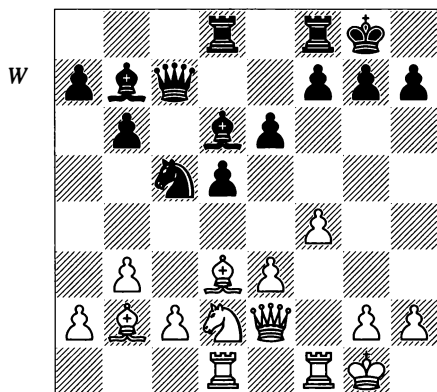
20...♗f6 21 ♗xb8 ♖h7 22 ♖e2 ♖xb8 23 ♗d6 ♗a6 24 b4 ♗a4 25 b5 ♗c3 26 ♖c2 ♗xd1 27 ♖xd1 ♖d8 28 ♗xf5 ♗b7 29 ♗d4 dxc4 30 ♖g6+ ♗g7 31 ♖xe6+ ♗h8 32 ♖e7 1-0

Noakh – Moiseev

Leningrad 1952

1 d4 ♗f6 2 ♗f3 e6 3 e3 d5 4 ♗d3 ♗e7 5 0-0 0-0 6 ♗bd2 c5 7 b3 b6 8 ♖e2 ♗b7 9 ♗b2

♖bd7 10 ♖ad1 ♖c7 11 ♜e5 ♖ad8 12 f4 ♜d6
13 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 14 dxc5 ♜xc5 (D)



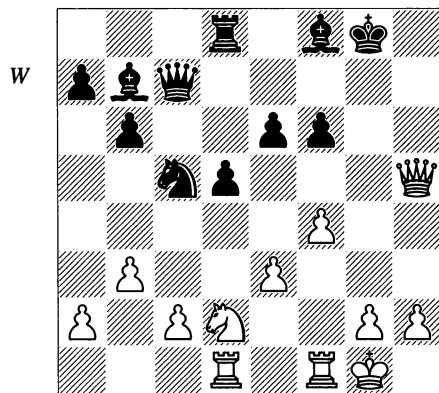
15 ♜xh7+!? ♜xh7 16 ♖h5+ ♜g8 17 ♜xg7
f6

The only move, as the acceptance of the sacrifice would have a dismal outcome: 17...♜xg7? 18 ♖g5+ ♜h8 19 ♖f6+! ♜g8 20 ♖f3 ♜e4 21 ♜xe4.

18 ♜xf8

White had no choice, as 18 ♖f3 ♖xg7 19 ♖g3 ♖xg3 20 hxg3 favours Black while 18 ♜h6 ♖f7 (18...♖h7!?) or 18 ♖h8+ ♜f7 19 ♖h7 ♜e8! is even worse.

18...♜xf8 (D)

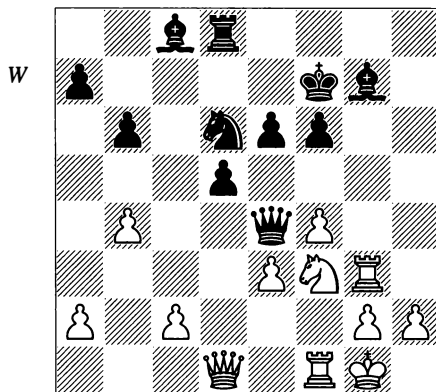


19 ♖f3

White could have continued 19 b4!?, when 19...♜e4 20 ♖g4+ ♜f7 21 ♜xe4 dxe4 22 f5 gives him attacking chances. Black could also reply 19...♜a4 20 ♖g4+ ♜g7 21 ♖xe6+ ♖f7,

when it seems that he can hold the position, but White has acquired a rook and three pawns for the two bishops he sacrificed.

19...♖h7 20 ♖g3+ ♜g7 21 ♖g4 ♜c8 22 b4 ♜b7 23 ♖f1 ♜d6 24 ♖d1 ♜f7 25 ♖h3 ♖g6 26 ♖g3 ♖f5 27 ♜f3 ♖e4 (D)



28 ♜d4?

White misses the opportunity to execute another sacrifice with 28 ♜e5+! fxe5 (28...♜g8 29 ♖xg7+! ♜xg7 30 ♖g4+ with a draw) 29 ♖h5+! ♜f8 30 ♖xg7! ♖xe3+ 31 ♜h1 ♜xg7 32 ♖g5+, when he would at least be assured of a draw. Black is now able to halt White's attack, leading the game to an ending where his two minor pieces will dominate the f1-rook.

28...♖h8 29 ♖g4 ♖h7 30 ♖h3 ♖g6 31 ♖xg6+ ♜xg6 32 ♖xh8 ♜xh8 33 g4 e5 34 fxe5 fxe5 35 ♜c6 ♜f6 36 h3 a6 37 ♖d1 ♜c4 38 ♖xd5 ♜b7 39 ♜e7+ ♜xe7 40 ♖d7 ♜xb4 41 ♖xb7 ♜c5 42 ♜g2 ♜xe3+ 43 ♜f3 ♜c4 44 ♖a7 ♜d6 45 h4 ♜f6 46 h5 e4+ 47 ♜f4 e3 48 g5+ ♜e6 49 g6 ♜f5 50 ♜f3 ♜d4+ 51 ♜g4 ♜f8 52 ♜g3 e2 0-1

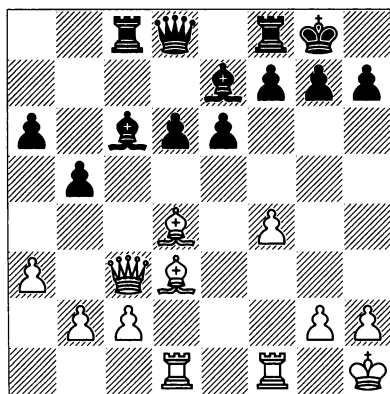
Ivanović – A. Sokolov

Novi Sad 1984

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜c6 5 ♜c3 a6 6 ♜e2 d6 7 ♜e3 ♜f6 8 0-0 ♜e7 9 ♜h1 0-0 10 f4 ♜d7 11 ♖e1 b5 12 a3 ♜xd4 13 ♜xd4 ♜c6 14 ♖d1 ♜xe4 15 ♜d3 ♜xc3 16 ♖xc3 ♖c8 (D)

White proceeds with the double bishop sacrifice, hoping for either perpetual check or a

W



position where his queen will prove at least equal to the opponent's pieces. Besides, his material disadvantage does not allow second thoughts.

17 ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 18 ♚h3+ ♘g8 19 ♖xg7 ♘xg7 20 ♜xd6! ♜h8!

20...♖xd6 or 20...♚xd6 allows perpetual check with 21 ♚g4+. Black decides to fight for victory.

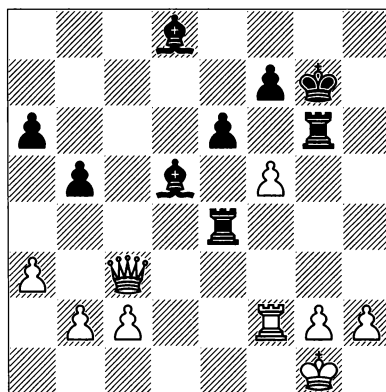
21 ♜xd8 ♖xd8

The position that has occurred clearly is not inferior for Black, because the white queen is hardly menacing. In contrast, the black pieces have several lines on which to find targets.

22 ♚e3 ♜h6 23 ♘g1 ♖d5 24 ♜f2 ♜c4 25 f5 ♜e4 26 ♚g3+ ♜g6! 27 ♚c3+ (D)

27 fxg6? ♜e1+ 28 ♜f1 ♖b6+ would be disastrous for White. He is forced into an ending where his rook will prove inferior to the two black bishops.

B



27...♖f6 28 ♚d2 ♜d4 29 fxg6 ♜xd2 30 ♜xd2 ♖xb2 31 gxf7 ♖xa3 32 h4 ♖c5+ 33 ♖h2 a5 34 g4 a4 35 g5 a3 36 ♜d1 ♖xf7 37 h5 a2 38 c3 ♖d6+ 39 ♖h3 ♖e5 40 g6+ ♖g7 41 ♜f1 ♖h6 0-1

Concluding this chapter, I would like to point out the complete lack of games of mine featuring this theme. Indeed, after 2250 official games (1979-2006), I never participated, either as attacker or defender, in a double bishop sacrifice!

Won Positions

The definition of a won position is simple: the result of the game is under control and entirely dependent on the player who has the 'won' position. This means that it is his moves that will determine whether he will properly exploit it (victory) or whether he will mishandle it, partly (draw) or completely (loss). The opponent has no bearing on the events as regards his direct participation in the determination of the final result, but only the obligation to put up a stiff resistance.

Every chess-player has several games to show, in which he failed to exploit a winning position he obtained either after an excellent combination or simply after the opponent's mistakes. He may well have understood then that the conversion of a won position into victory is not such a simple matter.

As in all the topics we have discussed, here as well there are golden rules that we must take into account and obey:

1) *Stabilization of the advantage*: The advantage must be retained or even increased. When we are winning positionally, chasing after a slight material gain at the cost of other advantages is not obligatory. Increasing control and pressure must be our primary concern.

2) *Restriction of the opponent's counterplay*: We must not give the opponent possibilities to free his position. If we do not know how to win directly, we select some 'useful' moves while waiting for the right moment. We must not forget that it is easier to play a won position than a lost one! Patience and persistence are the fundamental elements of converting a won position.

Should we wish to proceed to tactical play, aiming at material or further strategic gain, we must always evaluate the amount of counterplay allowed to our opponent. If we conclude that some, even slight, counterplay exists, then we have probably strayed from the right path. If

our opponent sacrifices material to obtain counterplay, we must always examine the option of declining the material and focusing on our pressure or, if we are forced to accept the sacrifice, we examine the option of returning it (in part or in whole) to extinguish this counterplay.

3) *Avoidance of pointless complications*: Naturally, this rule does not concern complications that can forcibly and positively determine the result. In general, it is better to avoid complications in a won position. If, however, we are forced to play along, then we proceed very carefully. We must not forget that our opponent has nothing to lose and naturally desires the complications, because they will surely give him more practical saving chances than those provided by passive defence.

4) *Psychological factors*: Special importance must be attached to the psychological factor. Many chess-players have the bad habit of, upon arriving at a won position, relaxing and expecting the position to win itself. That is a serious mistake, as the game is not over yet and therefore we must try with the same (or perhaps even greater!) ceaseless intensity as before. *Our advantage lies only in the fact that from now on it is we that determine the result of the game.*

Grivas – Abramović

Athens 1989

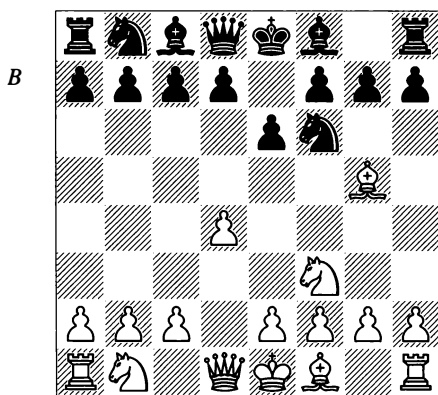
1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 e6 3 ♙g5 (D)

This seemingly quiet continuation can lead to extremely complicated positions.

3... ♙e7

Black usually opts for two other moves:

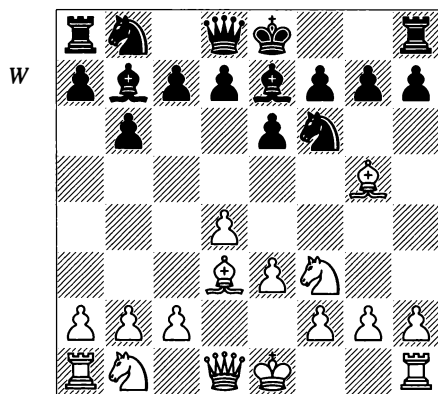
a) 3... h6 4 ♙xf6 ♖xf6 5 e4 d6 (5... b6 6 ♙d3 ♙b7 7 ♘bd2 d5 8 ♖e2 dxe4 9 ♙xe4 c6 10 ♘e5 and White is better, Grivas-E. Pandavos, Khania 1987) 6 e5 ♖e7 7 ♘bd2 g6 8 ♙d3 ♙g7 9 0-0 dxe5 10 dxe5 ♘c6 11 ♖e2 ♙d7 12 a3 g5 13 ♙e4! is unclear, Grivas-Luther, Leningrad 1989.



See also Grivas-Sturua, Katerini 1992, analysed in Volume 2 of this series.

b) 3...c5 4 e3 ♖b6 (4...d5 5 c3 ♖b6 6 ♖b3 ♜e4 7 ♜f4 ♙d6 8 ♙xd6 ♖xd6 9 ♜bd2 ♜xd2 10 ♜xd2 0-0 11 ♖a3! is slightly better for White, Grivas-Olcayoz, Panormo Z 1998; for 4...b6? see Grivas-Vidarsson, Reykjavik 1994 on page 39) 5 ♜bd2 ♖xb2 6 ♙xf6 gxf6 7 ♙d3 ♖b6 8 0-0 ♙e7 9 c4 ♜c6 (9...♖d8?! 10 d5 d6 11 ♜e4 ♜d7 12 ♙c2 ♜b6 13 ♜fd2 ♖c7 14 ♖h5 ♙d7 15 a4 0-0-0? 16 a5 ♜xc4 17 ♜xc4 exd5 18 ♜c3 1-0 Grivas-Skalkotas, Athens 1991) 10 d5 ♜b4 11 ♙e2 f5 12 a3 ♜a6 13 e4 d6 14 exf5 exd5 15 cxd5 ♙xf5 16 ♜c4 with an advantage for White, Grivas-Skalkotas, Athens 2000.

4 e3 b6 5 ♙d3 ♙b7 (D)



6 0-0

After 6 ♜bd2 h6! 7 ♙xf6 (7 ♙h4?! g5! 8 ♙g3 g4) 7...♙xf6 Black faces no particular

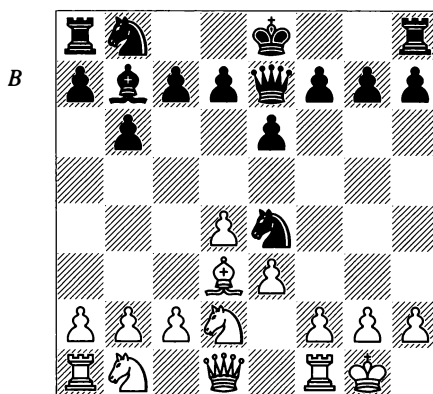
problems, and the bishop-pair provides good prospects for the future.

6...♜e4!

Black equalizes through exchanges.

7 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 8 ♜fd2! (D)

8 ♜bd2 f5! is undesirable for White.



8...d5?!

The start of Black's problems. Equal chances are offered by the simple 8...♜xd2 9 ♜xd2 0-0 or even 8...f5 9 f3 ♜xd2 10 ♜xd2 0-0.

9 ♜xe4! dx e4 10 ♙b5+!

This strange move is directly connected to Black's future plans. The latter wishes, at some moment, to achieve equality with the freeing advance ...e5, and not ...c5, after which he would have to face a queenside pawn-majority. Thus, White tries to provoke ...c6, so that the b7-bishop will remain blocked by its fellow pawn.

10...♜d7!? 11 a4!

A strong move, 'defending' against Black's threat of 11...a6 while also threatening 12 a5.

11...c6

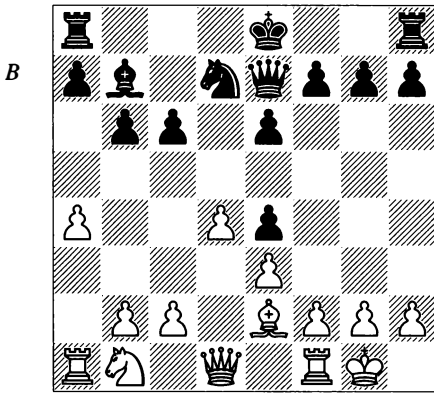
Compulsory, as 11...a6?! 12 ♙xd7+ ♖xd7 13 a5! b5 14 ♜d2, intending ♜b3-c5, would give White a clear plus.

12 ♙e2 (D)

12...e5?!

Black should have preferred the passive 12...0-0 (12...a5?! 13 ♜a3 and ♜c4 gives White pressure on the squares b6, d6 and e5) with a slight advantage for White. His desire to proceed faster than his position allows will prove mistaken.

13 a5! ♜f6



Black's alternatives are inferior: 13...0-0 14 a6! ♜c8 15 d5! and 13...exd4 14 ♖xd4 0-0 15 ♜d1! intending ♜c3 and ♜c4. In both cases White is clearly better.

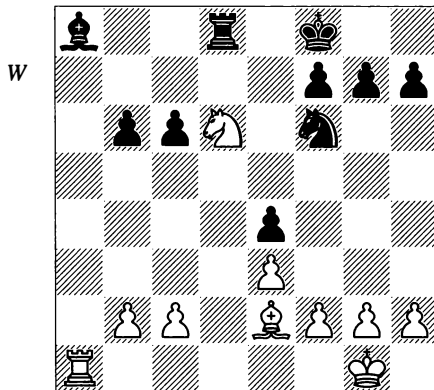
14 axb6! axb6 15 ♜xa8+ ♜xa8 16 ♜a3! 0-0

Black's options were restricted, as 16...exd4 17 ♖xd4 c5? 18 ♖a4+ would be undesirable.

17 dxe5 ♜xe5 18 ♜c4 ♜c7 19 ♜d6!

After the compulsory exchange of queens, Black's position becomes more vulnerable. Several squares in his camp are weakened, while the a8-bishop's future is unenviable.

19...♜xd6 20 ♜xd6 ♜d8 21 ♜a1! ♜f8 (D)



White has acquired a series of slight advantages, such as possession of the (important) a-file, better minor-piece placement and weak black pawns (b6, c6 and e4). The combination of these three small pluses entitles White to a crystal-clear advantage. It is a fact that White has faultlessly exploited Black's slight inaccuracies

and has reached this pleasant situation, just as it is also a fact that from now on he did everything that he shouldn't do, gradually losing his advantage as a result.

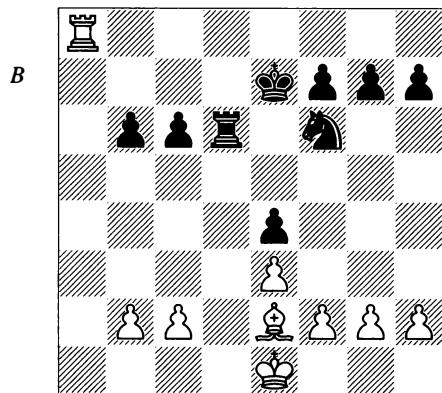
22 ♜f1?

White's superiority could have been retained with the simple 22 ♜c4! ♜d5 (22...b5 23 ♜b6! ♜b7 24 ♜a7 ♜b8 25 b4!) 23 ♜a7.

22...♜xd6!

Naturally! Black exchanges the excellent d6-knight for the useless a8-bishop and is able at the same time to protect his pawns. White's advantages disappear with alarming speed!

23 ♜xa8+ ♜e7 24 ♜el (D)



24...b5!

The position now offers equal chances. White failed to register this change and clumsily continued his effort to achieve victory.

25 ♜a7+ ♜d7 26 ♜a6 ♜c7 27 ♜d2 ♜d5 28 c3

28 c4! offered better prospects.

28...f5 29 g3 g6 30 ♜c2 ♜f6 31 h3 ♜d7 32 ♜a1 ♜e5 33 ♜d1 ♜a7 34 g4??

It was about time for White to acquiesce to a draw, with 34 h4.

34...♜d7!

Preparing the march of the black king with ...♜f6-g5-h4.

35 ♜d4 ♜f6 36 gxf5 gxf5 37 c4?

The last mistake, in time-trouble. Some drawing chances were offered by 37 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 38 c4!.

37...♜xd4 38 exd4 ♜xc4 39 ♜xc4 bxc4 40 ♜c3 f4 41 ♜xc4 f3 0-1

White lost the game because he didn't exploit his superior position, committing serious errors, while he also failed to 'compromise' when he lost his advantage. He didn't understand or didn't accept the fact that the game had practically started all over again and he kept playing under the illusion of his initial superiority.

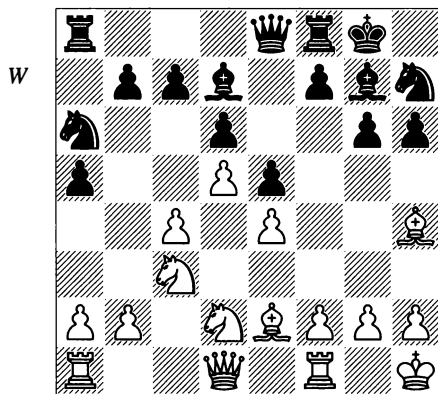
Nenashev – Grivas

Aegina 1994

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♟c3 ♟g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♟f3 0-0 6 ♟e2 e5 7 d5 a5 8 ♟g5 h6 9 ♟h4 ♟a6 10 ♟d2 ♞e8 11 0-0 ♟d7 12 ♟h1!?

A relatively new idea, in place of the common 12 b3; for example, 12...♟h7 13 a3 f5 14 f3 ♟f6 15 b4 ♟h5 16 ♞b1 axb4 17 axb4 ♟f4 is unclear, Santrian-Grivas, Athens 1997. Alternatively, 12 ♞b1?! ♟h7 13 b3 f5 14 exf5 ♟xf5 15 ♞c1 ♟c5 16 ♟e1 g5 17 ♟g3 ♟f6 18 ♟f1 ♟g6 19 ♟e3 ♟h5 gave Black a strong initiative in Pountzas-Grivas, Kalavryta 1998.

12...♟h7 (D)



13 ♞b1!?

An unclear position with chances for both sides arose after 13 a3 b6 (13...h5!? 14 f3 ♟h6 15 ♟f2 ♞e7 16 b3 f5 17 ♞b1 ♟c5 18 ♞c2 is unclear, Grivas-I.Nikolaidis, Kalavryta 1997) 14 ♟b5 (14 b3 ♟f6! 15 ♟xf6 ♟xf6 16 ♞c2 h5 17 ♞b2 c5 18 dxc6 ♟xc6 19 b4 ♟c7 20 ♟d5 ♟cxd5 21 exd5 ♟d7 22 ♞ae1 axb4 23 axb4 b5 and Black was better in Tella-Grivas, Athens 1997) 14...♟f6 15 ♟xf6 ♟xf6 16 b4 ♞e7 17

♞b3 h5 18 ♞c3 c6 19 dxc6 ♟xc6 20 f3 ♞fc8 21 ♞b2 ♟c7 in Hellsten-Grivas, Korinthos 1997.

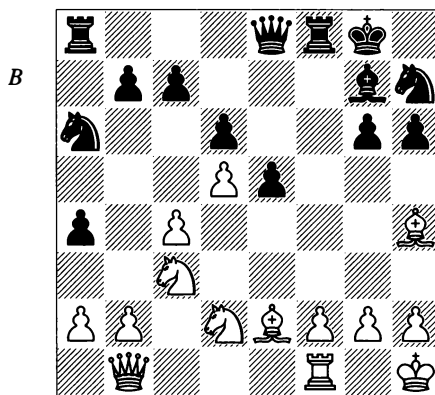
13...f5! 14 exf5?

A very bad move based on a tactical oversight. 14 f3 is unclear.

14...♟xf5 15 ♟b3?

The strong Uzbek GM (currently German with the name Alexander Graf) picked up his knight and placed it on e4. Before releasing it, he realized his fatal mistake (15 ♟de4?? ♟xe4 16 ♟xe4 ♞f4!). White should have accepted an inferior position with 15 ♞c1.

15...a4 16 ♟d2 ♟xb1 17 ♞xb1 (D)



Black has won an exchange and of course, material-wise, has a decisive advantage. White has some positional compensation on the light squares and the outpost on e4, but this can under no circumstances be considered enough to save the game! From a psychological viewpoint White is now relieved since he has nothing more to lose, while Black feels 'obliged' to prove the superiority of his extra material.

17...♟f6! 18 ♟g3 ♟g5 19 ♟de4 ♟f4!

Exchanges (as long as they don't provide the opponent with other compensating factors) favour the side with the material advantage.

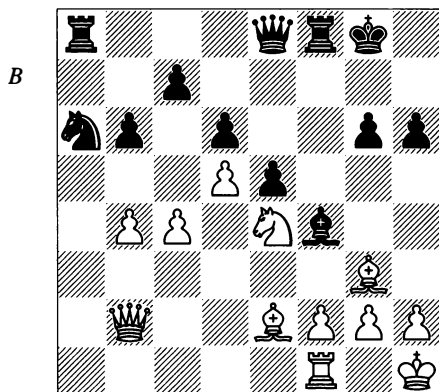
20 b4 axb3 21 axb3 ♟f6?

A significant error, because it leaves the a6-knight out of play. The correct 21...♟c5! 22 ♟xc5 dxc5 23 ♟e4 b6 24 ♟g4 ♟xg3 25 hxg3 ♟f6 would allow White only minimal chances for survival.

22 b4! ♟xe4 23 ♟xe4 b6?

The direct 23...♖a4? 24 b5 would justify White's play, but 23...♟b8! (intending ...♟d7-f6) 24 c5 ♖e7 was necessary.

24 ♖b2! (D)



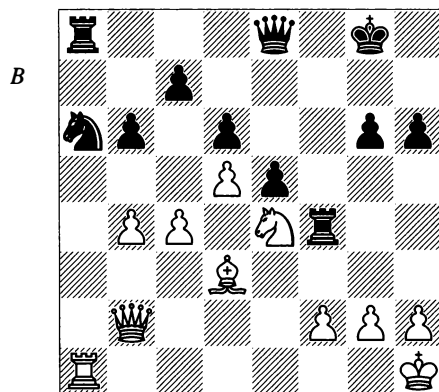
24...♖a4??

Incomprehensible. 24...♟xg3 25 hxg3 ♖a4 26 ♖b1 was essential.

25 ♟xf4 ♟xf4?

Black should have tried 25...exf4, although White seems to have many threats after that (♟f6+, ♟g4, ♟e1).

26 ♖a1 ♖e8 27 ♟d3 (D)



White now has full compensation for the exchange and is naturally on top, as his pieces occupy their optimal positions while the a6-knight stands miserably and is constantly under the threat of c5. Black should now organize his defence with ...♖c8-b7 and ...♟ff8, when things are not yet clear.

27...♟xb4??

Also incomprehensible! Black commits suicide, perhaps to inflict 'self-punishment' for his many mistakes.

28 ♟xa8 ♖xa8 29 ♖xb4 ♖a1+ 30 ♖b1 ♖d4 31 g3

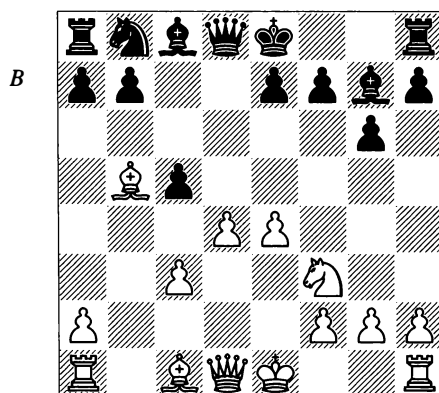
White now has a won position and he exploits it with accuracy. The only explanation I can offer is that, having psychologically prepared for a great fight with a strong GM rated 2600+, my concentration was lost after his blunder and I simply felt obliged to win quickly, considering that the game was over. I forgot an important detail, that I would also have to prove it! Another paradox is that from the five games I played against the strong Uzbek GM this was the only one I lost.

31...♟f8 32 ♖c2 ♟g7 33 ♟g2 g5 34 ♟e2 ♟h8 35 ♟f3 ♟f7 36 ♟g4 ♟f8 37 ♟e6 ♟g7 38 ♖e2 ♟h8 39 ♖g4 ♖xc4 40 h4 ♟f4 41 gxf4 ♖xe4+ 42 ♖f3 ♖xf4 43 h5 b5 44 ♖d3 e4 45 ♖c3+ 1-0

Grivas – Kožul

Vinkovci 1989

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♟c3 d5 4 ♟f3 ♟g7 5 cxd5 ♟xd5 6 e4 ♟xc3 7 bxc3 c5 8 ♟b5+!? (D)



A relatively harmless continuation, which however requires good knowledge from Black.

8...♟c6

The best, as 8...♟d7 9 ♟xd7+ ♖xd7 10 0-0 ♟c6 11 ♟e3 cxd4 12 cxd4 0-0 13 ♖b1 ♟a5 14 d5 ♟fc8 15 ♟d4 ♟xd4 16 ♖xd4 gave a slight

but permanent edge to White in Kostić-Grünfeld, Teplitz-Schönau 1922.

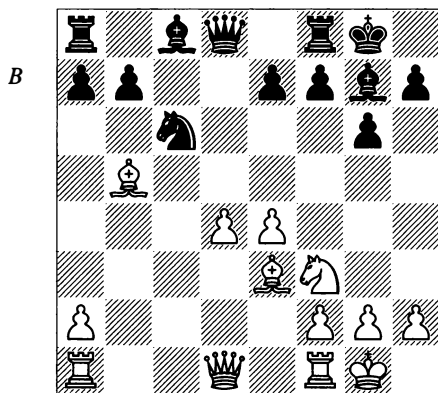
9 0-0

After 9 d5 a6 (9...♗xc3+ 10 ♖d2 ♖a5 11 ♖b1! a6 12 ♖a4 b5 13 dxc6 bxa4 with advantage for White according to Christiansen) 10 ♖a4 b5 11 dxc6 ♖xd1+ 12 ♖xd1 bxa4 13 ♖c2 f5! Black had the advantage in Hermlin-Veingold, Pärnu 1982.

9...cxd4

Inferior is 9...♖a5?! 10 ♖b3 0-0 11 ♖xc6 bxc6 12 ♖a3! ♖xa3 13 ♖xa3 cxd4 14 cxd4 ♖d8 15 ♖ac1 ± Larsen-Hort, London (Master Game) 1978.

10 cxd4 0-0 11 ♖e3 (D)



11...♖g4

According to ECO, 11...♖a5 12 ♖a4 ♖xa4 13 ♖xa4 ♖d7 14 ♖ab1 b6 15 ♖fc1 ♖ac8 16 d5 ♖e5 also leads to equality.

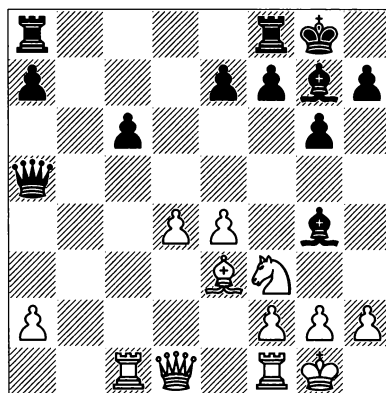
12 ♖xc6 bxc6 13 ♖c1 ♖a5! (D)

13...♖xf3?! allows White to gain the advantage after 14 ♖xf3 ♖xd4 15 ♖fd1 e5 (15...c5? 16 ♖xc5 ♖xe3 17 ♖xd8 ♖xc5 18 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 19 ♖c3 ♖b6 20 ♖f1 +- Kramnik-Kasparov, Moscow (19) blitz 1998) 16 ♖xc6, 13...♖c8 14 e5 ♖e6 15 ♖a4 ♖d5 16 ♖d2 ♖d7 17 f3 ♖b8 18 ♖b3 ♖f5 19 ♖c5, Bonin-Ashley, Manhattan 1998, or 13...♖d7 14 h3 ♖xf3 15 ♖xf3 ♖e6 16 ♖c2 ♖ad8 17 e5, Urban-Romanishin, Pardubice 1999.

14 ♖d2!

The right move, as 14 ♖xc6 ♖xa2 15 ♖c7 ♖e6 16 h3 ♖d6! 17 ♖c5 ♖d7 leads to an unclear position, in which I would however prefer Black.

W



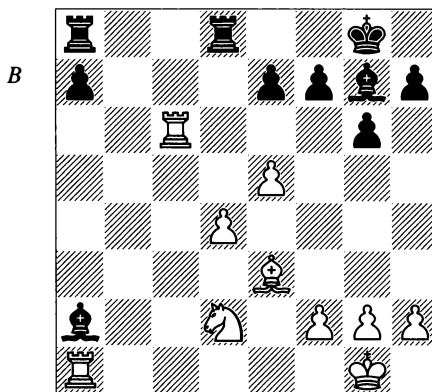
14...♖xd2 15 ♖xd2 ♖fd8 16 e5!

This is White's idea, since 16 ♖b3 a5! 17 ♖xc6 a4 18 ♖c5 ♖e2 19 ♖e1 ♖xd4 does not trouble Black, Razuvaev-Tseshkovsky, USSR Ch (Minsk) 1979.

16...♖e6! 17 ♖xc6

The only move, as 17 a4 ♖d5 is fully acceptable for Black.

17...♖xa2 18 ♖a1 (D)



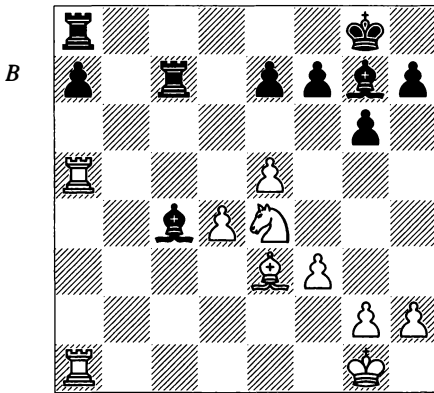
18...♖e6?

Black should play 18...♖d5! 19 ♖ca6 (19 ♖c7 a5! is very risky for White) 19...♖d7, when White has slight pressure but Black should be able to defend. The choice of opening variation was justified, as Black appeared unprepared for it.

19 ♖ca6 ♖d7 20 ♖e4

The difference from the last note is obvious, as the white knight will occupy the outpost on c5.

20...♖c7 21 ♖6a5! ♙c4 22 f3 (D)



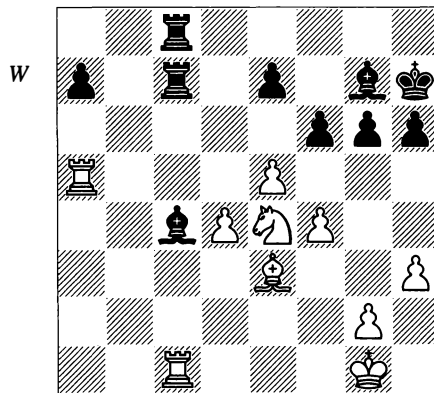
22...f6?

Black cannot sit and wait any longer, and so he tries to find counterplay, at the same time though weakening his king. Although 22...e6 is hardly likeable, it should have been preferred.

23 f4 h6 24 h3 ♘h7 25 ♖c1!

A change of plan, as White cannot expect much solely from his pressure on the a-file.

25...♖ac8 (D)



26 d5?

White's idea is correct, but the execution flawed! With 26 exf6! ♙xf6 27 d5 White would be on the right track.

26...fxe5

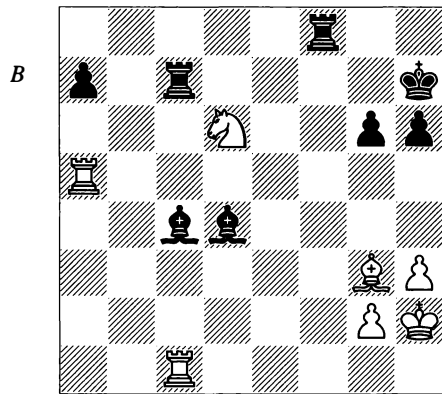
After 26...♙d3? 27 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 28 ♘c5! White's advantage is decisive.

27 d6 exd6 28 ♘xd6 exf4 29 ♙xf4

Not, of course, 29 ♘xc8? fxe3 and Black will hold the position thanks to his passed pawn and the two bishops.

29...♙d4+ 30 ♘h2 ♖f8 31 ♙g3? (D)

White had to play 31 ♙e5! (31 ♙d2? ♙b6 32 ♖xc4 ♙xa5 33 ♙xa5 ♖xc4 34 ♘xc4 leaves Black better) 31...♙xe5+ 32 ♖xe5 ♖f4 33 ♖a5 ♘g8 34 ♘xc4 (34 ♖a4? ♙b3!) with equality. During the game neither player realized that White's 26th move was a mistake.



31...♙b6?

Black could have seized the advantage with 31...♖f1! 32 ♖xf1 ♙xf1 33 ♘b5 ♖c2! 34 ♘xd4 ♖xg2+ 35 ♘h1 ♖xg3 36 ♖xa7+ ♘g8. But now White is winning. However, he clearly underestimated Black's (hidden) possibilities. I recall thinking: 'why is my opponent still playing?'. It is a critical moment when the chess-player, exhausted by the fervour of the battle, is ready to reap the fruit of his effort. It is that moment when body and spirit relax and a sweet feeling of satisfaction runs through the nervous system. It is that moment when everything can be turned upside-down, since the game isn't really over, except in the mind that seeks the deliverance of victory. All the above sound poetic and this does in fact happen. However, a game of chess ends in only four conclusive ways: mate, resignation of one of the players, stalemate or mutual agreement of a draw.

32 ♖a4??

Allowing Black an easy combination that secures the draw. Relatively simple was 32 ♖aa1! ♙f7 (32...♙e6 33 ♖xc7+ ♙xc7 34 ♖xa7) 33

$\text{♞xc7 ♜xc7 34 ♞xa7 ♜xd6 35 ♜xd6 ♞g8}$
 (35... $\text{♞d8 36 ♞xf7+ ♞g8 37 ♞f6 ♞g7 38 ♜e5}$)
 36 ♜xf8 ♞xf8 37 ♞g3 with an easy theoretical victory.

32...♞f1!!

A thunderbolt from nowhere, saving the draw! White is forced (with a heavy heart) to comply (33 ♞axc4? ♞xc1).

33 ♞cxc4 ♜g1+ 1/2-1/2

Grivas – Gazis

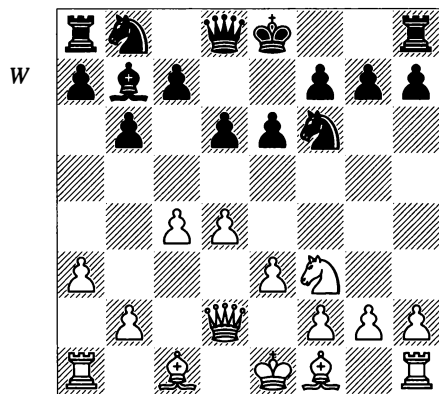
Greek Team Ch, Kallithea 2002

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 ♜b4+ 4 ♘bd2 b6 5 a3 ♜xd2+

For 5... ♜e7? see the game Grivas-Papandreou, Ikaria 1995 on page 51.

6 ♞xd2 ♜b7 7 e3 d6 (D)

The correct reaction. 7... c5 was seen in Grivas-Kindermann, Katerini 1992, analysed in Volume 2 of this series, while 7... $\text{♘e4 8 ♞d3 d5 9 b3 c5 10 ♜e2 0-0 11 0-0 cxd4 12 exd4 ♘d7 13 a4}$ gave White a small but permanent edge in Gelfand-Adams, Dos Hermanas 1995.



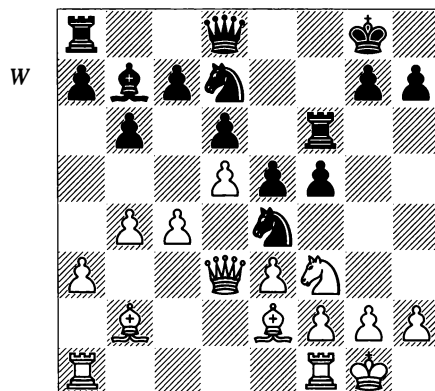
8 ♜e2 ♘bd7 9 b4 0-0 10 ♜b2 ♘e4 11 ♞d3! f5 12 0-0 ♞f6

Another option for Black is 12... ♞e7 followed by ... e5 , which would lead to a positional struggle.

13 d5 e5? (D)

A mistake, leaving Black's position in disarray. The only (and good!) continuation is 13... $\text{♞g6!! 14 dxe6 (14 ♘d4!?) 14...♘f8! 15 c5 ♘xe6 16 cxd6 cxd6!}$, when Black has a strong

attack (e.g., 17 $\text{♞ad1 ♜h8 18 ♘e1?? ♘6g5 19 ♜h1 ♘h3 0-1}$ Gelfand-Illescas, Madrid 1996).



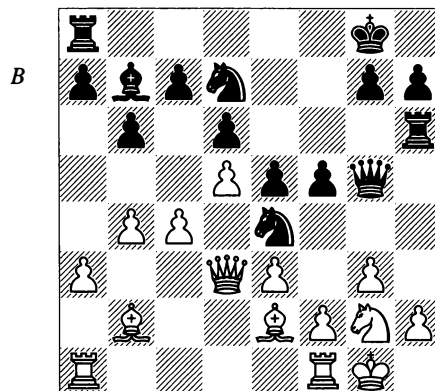
14 ♘e1?!

Although White can also retain an advantage after the inferior move in the game, even stronger is 14 $\text{♘h4! g6 15 f3 ♘g5 16 f4 ♘e4 17 ♘f3 ♞e7 18 ♘d2 ♘xd2 19 ♞xd2 ♞f7 20 e4 ±}$ Miles-Mascariñas, Lugano 1986.

14...♞h6 15 g3

After 15 $\text{f3? ♞h4! 16 fxe4 fxe4 17 ♞d2 ♞xh2+ 18 ♜f2 ♞f8+}$ Black is winning.

15...♞g5 16 ♘g2! (D)



The g2-knight is the key white defensive piece. White plans, by mobilizing his kingside pawns(!), to push Black back.

16...♞g6 17 f3 ♘g5

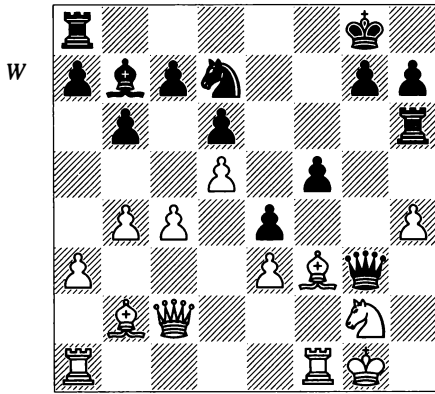
The sacrificial continuation 17... $\text{♘g3 18 hxg3 ♞xg3 19 ♞xf5 ♞h2 20 ♞f2}$ was inadequate, but Black could have tried 17... ♘ef6 .

18 h4! e4

Black realizes the difficulties after the 'natural' 18...♟f7 19 g4!! fxg4 20 fxg4 and decides to complicate the position, seeking counterplay that will allow him to stay in the fight for a positive result.

19 ♖c2! ♜xf3+ 20 ♙xf3 ♖xg3! (D)

After 20...exf3 21 ♜xf3 White has a strategically won position, Black being devoid of any counterplay.



Now a critical moment in the game has been reached. White, apart from his extra material, also has better placed pieces than the corresponding black ones (a8-rook, b7-bishop and d7-knight), which will struggle ever to occupy satisfactory posts. The return of the extra material with 21 ♙xe4! fxe4 22 ♖xe4 would leave White with a large positional advantage and under no danger. Naturally, the game continuation must also be good for White, but Black will have enough practical chances to cause serious headaches.

21 ♙d1?! ♜xh4 22 ♜xf5 ♟f8!

The exchange of an important defender (the f5-rook) for a useless piece (the a8-rook) certainly suits Black.

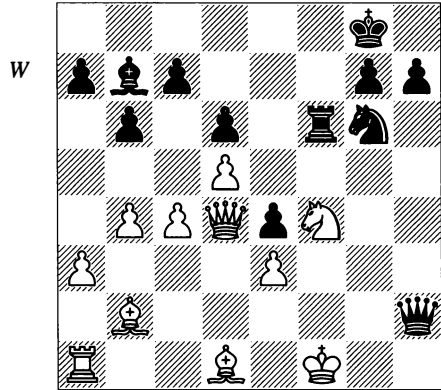
23 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 24 ♖c3

White reacts instinctively after realizing that the planned 24 ♖f2?? loses to 24...♜h1+!, while the threat of ...♙c8-h3 is strong.

24...♜h6 25 ♖c2 ♜h4 26 ♖c3 ♜h6 27 ♖d4?

White's chain of thought is broken and for that reason it would be better (from a practical viewpoint) to agree to a draw by repetition.

From a theoretical viewpoint he could continue his effort with 27 ♖e1!?, although then Black would enjoy rich tactical possibilities.

27...♖h2+ 28 ♙f1 ♜f6+ 29 ♜f4 ♜g6! (D)

Black's initiative is now very dangerous, while the white king is also exposed. Thus it comes as no surprise that the white army collapses immediately.

30 ♙e1 ♜e5?

30...♜xf4! 31 exf4 e3! was simple.

31 ♙e2 g5??

Black could have returned to the right path with 31...♜f3+ 32 ♙xf3 exf3.

32 ♜h5??

White could have played 32 ♖xe4! gxf4 33 ♙xe5 ♖g1+ 34 ♙d2 ♖xe3+ 35 ♖xe3 fxe3+ 36 ♙xe3 dxe5 37 ♙e4 with a slight edge.

32...♟f2 33 ♜f6+ ♜xf6 0-1**Grivas – Mastrokoukos**

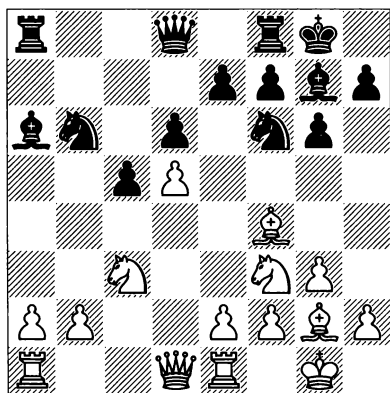
Athens 1990

1 d4 c5 2 d5 ♜f6 3 c4 b5 4 cxb5 a6 5 bxa6 g6 6 g3 d6 7 ♙g2 ♙g7 8 ♜f3 ♙xa6 9 0-0 ♜bd7 10 ♜c3 ♜b6 11 ♙e1 0-0 12 ♙f4 (D)

12...♜h5

Black has also tried 12...♜c4 13 ♖c1 ♖a5 14 ♜d2 ♜fb8 15 ♜xc4 ♙xc4 16 ♙d2 ♜d7 17 b3 ♙a6 18 ♜a4 ♖d8 19 ♙c3, P.Nikolić-Vaganian, Sarajevo 1987, and 12...♜a7 13 h3 ♖b8 14 g4 ♖b7 15 e4 ♜c4 16 ♖b1 ♜d7 17 ♙f1 ♖b8 18 ♙xc4 ♙xc4 19 b3, P.Nikolić-Milos, Buenos Aires 1992, with advantage for White in both cases.

B

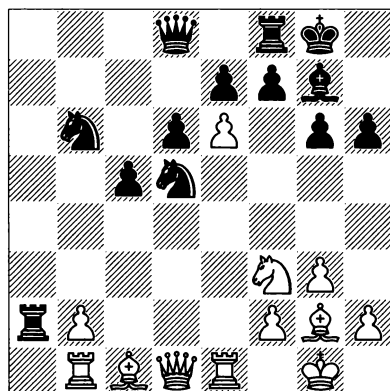


13 ♖g5! h6 14 ♖c1! ♜f6 15 ♞b1 ♖c4 16 e4! ♖xa2?

Capturing the pawn leads to grave difficulties. Better chances are offered by 16...♜fd7 17 a3 ♖a6 18 ♞c2 ♜c4 19 ♞d1, P.Nikolić-Kotronias, Bled/Rogaška Slatina 1991.

17 ♜xa2 ♞xa2 18 e5 ♜fxd5 19 e6 (D)

B



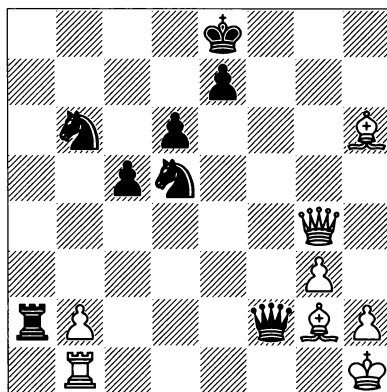
19...fxe6

19...♜b4 20 exf7+ ♞xf7 21 ♖h3 ♜h7 22 ♖e6 ♞f8 23 ♖xf7 ♞xf7 24 ♞e4 ♞d5 25 ♞e2

was also bad for Black in P.Nikolić-Fedorowicz, Lucerne Wcht 1989.

20 ♞xe6 ♞d7 21 ♞xg6 ♞f5 22 ♜h4! ♞xf2+ 23 ♜h1 ♜h7 24 ♞xg7+! ♜xg7 25 ♞g4+ ♜h8 26 ♜g6+ ♜g7 27 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 28 ♖xh6+ ♜e8 (D)

W



White's strategic and tactical superiority is about to bear fruit with the very simple 29 ♞f1!, winning the black queen. However, out of excessive certainty (or excessive stupidity) White immediately proceeded with the variation calculated several moves back, certain that the game was already over and that the opponent will resign any time now!

29 ♖xd5?? ♞xb2!

And now White loses easily!

30 ♞h5+ ♜d8 31 ♖a1 ♜xd5 32 ♞h3 ♞f3+ 33 ♜g1 ♞f2+ 34 ♜h1 ♜c7 35 ♞f1 ♞e2 36 g4 ♜f6 37 ♖g7 ♞b3 38 ♞g2 ♞xg2+ 39 ♜xg2 ♜xg4 40 ♞f7 ♜e3+ 41 ♜f2 ♜g4+ 42 ♜g2 ♜e3+ 43 ♜f2 ♜d7 44 h4 ♜e6 45 ♞f4 ♜f5 46 ♖h8 ♞b4 47 ♞xb4 cxb4 48 h5 ♜d5 49 ♜e1 ♜c4 50 ♜d1 ♜b3 51 ♖g7 ♜a2 52 h6 ♜xh6 0-1

Lost Positions

It is a natural occurrence for a chess-player to end up in a lost position now and then. In contrast to the previous chapter, in this case control of the position belongs to the opponent and the player with the lost position can only seek to place obstacles in his opponent's path.

The lost position is a stage of the game that most chess-players refuse to accept as a fact and, as a result, they fail to set up effective resistance until it is too late. Consequently, the first step in reacting to a lost position is its objective acceptance, based on the positional and tactical elements of the position.

The correct and most effective 'management' of a lost position is guided by the principle of 'resourceful play'. By this concept we imply the widening of the field of moves taken into account, examining moves to which we would hardly pay attention during the normal course of a game. It contains moves against the 'logic' of the position, material sacrifices aiming at the transition to a difficult ending but with several defensive resources, and other reactions in positions with a positional or material inferiority.

Besides, the side 'burdened' with the lost position has practically nothing to lose! The 'burden' of securing victory has passed to the opponent and he will desperately seek a conclusion, while avoiding risk. The inferior side is obliged not to surrender but to fight on, *in the context of constantly posing problems to the opponent*. A loss is of course still the most likely result, since the position is lost, but one is obliged to fight and not to surrender – and every so often resourceful play in a lost position will earn a half-point, or even a full point.

Matulović – Grivas
Athens 1984

1 e4 e5 2 d3 c6 3 b5 a6 4 a4 f6 5 0-0
xe4 6 d4 b5 7 b3 d5 8 dxe5 e6 9 e2

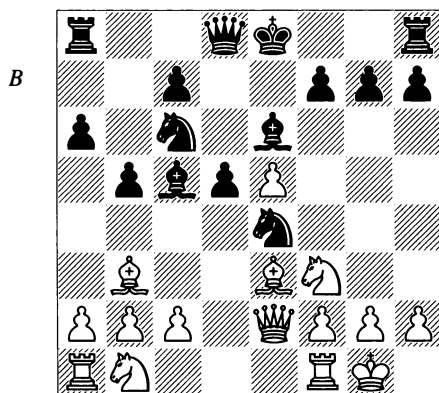
This continuation had its heyday in the 1970s but today has few supporters, as 9 d3 has won almost everyone's approval.

9...e5

Although 9...e7 is very popular, my personal opinion is that the text-move is more accurate.

10 e3 (D)

10 d3 e5 11 e3 d2 12 e4 0-0 13 e5 d6 14 e6 b8 15 axb5 axb5 16 e3 e3 17 e3 e7 18 c3 c6 offers equality, Ljubojević-Larsen, Linares 1981.



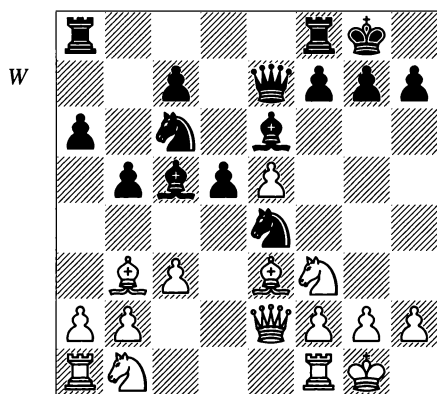
10...0-0

An interesting line is 10...e4!? 11 e4 d1 e7 12 c3 c6 13 e2 e7 14 e4 e3 15 e3 dxe4 16 e4 e3 17 e3 f3 (17 gxf3?! 0-0 18 d2 e6 19 f4 f6 20 f3 fe5 21 f5 e7 22 e5 e5 23 e5 e3 24 e5 e3 25 e5 e3 26 e5 e3 27 e5 e3 28 e5 e3 29 e5 e3 30 e5 e3 31 e5 e3 32 e5 e3 33 e5 e3 34 e5 e3 35 e5 e3 36 e5 e3 37 e5 e3 38 e5 e3 39 e5 e3 40 e5 e3 41 e5 e3 42 e5 e3 43 e5 e3 44 e5 e3 45 e5 e3 46 e5 e3 47 e5 e3 48 e5 e3 49 e5 e3 50 e5 e3 51 e5 e3 52 e5 e3 53 e5 e3 54 e5 e3 55 e5 e3 56 e5 e3 57 e5 e3 58 e5 e3 59 e5 e3 60 e5 e3 61 e5 e3 62 e5 e3 63 e5 e3 64 e5 e3 65 e5 e3 66 e5 e3 67 e5 e3 68 e5 e3 69 e5 e3 70 e5 e3 71 e5 e3 72 e5 e3 73 e5 e3 74 e5 e3 75 e5 e3 76 e5 e3 77 e5 e3 78 e5 e3 79 e5 e3 80 e5 e3 81 e5 e3 82 e5 e3 83 e5 e3 84 e5 e3 85 e5 e3 86 e5 e3 87 e5 e3 88 e5 e3 89 e5 e3 90 e5 e3 91 e5 e3 92 e5 e3 93 e5 e3 94 e5 e3 95 e5 e3 96 e5 e3 97 e5 e3 98 e5 e3 99 e5 e3 100 e5 e3 101 e5 e3 102 e5 e3 103 e5 e3 104 e5 e3 105 e5 e3 106 e5 e3 107 e5 e3 108 e5 e3 109 e5 e3 110 e5 e3 111 e5 e3 112 e5 e3 113 e5 e3 114 e5 e3 115 e5 e3 116 e5 e3 117 e5 e3 118 e5 e3 119 e5 e3 120 e5 e3 121 e5 e3 122 e5 e3 123 e5 e3 124 e5 e3 125 e5 e3 126 e5 e3 127 e5 e3 128 e5 e3 129 e5 e3 130 e5 e3 131 e5 e3 132 e5 e3 133 e5 e3 134 e5 e3 135 e5 e3 136 e5 e3 137 e5 e3 138 e5 e3 139 e5 e3 140 e5 e3 141 e5 e3 142 e5 e3 143 e5 e3 144 e5 e3 145 e5 e3 146 e5 e3 147 e5 e3 148 e5 e3 149 e5 e3 150 e5 e3 151 e5 e3 152 e5 e3 153 e5 e3 154 e5 e3 155 e5 e3 156 e5 e3 157 e5 e3 158 e5 e3 159 e5 e3 160 e5 e3 161 e5 e3 162 e5 e3 163 e5 e3 164 e5 e3 165 e5 e3 166 e5 e3 167 e5 e3 168 e5 e3 169 e5 e3 170 e5 e3 171 e5 e3 172 e5 e3 173 e5 e3 174 e5 e3 175 e5 e3 176 e5 e3 177 e5 e3 178 e5 e3 179 e5 e3 180 e5 e3 181 e5 e3 182 e5 e3 183 e5 e3 184 e5 e3 185 e5 e3 186 e5 e3 187 e5 e3 188 e5 e3 189 e5 e3 190 e5 e3 191 e5 e3 192 e5 e3 193 e5 e3 194 e5 e3 195 e5 e3 196 e5 e3 197 e5 e3 198 e5 e3 199 e5 e3 200 e5 e3 201 e5 e3 202 e5 e3 203 e5 e3 204 e5 e3 205 e5 e3 206 e5 e3 207 e5 e3 208 e5 e3 209 e5 e3 210 e5 e3 211 e5 e3 212 e5 e3 213 e5 e3 214 e5 e3 215 e5 e3 216 e5 e3 217 e5 e3 218 e5 e3 219 e5 e3 220 e5 e3 221 e5 e3 222 e5 e3 223 e5 e3 224 e5 e3 225 e5 e3 226 e5 e3 227 e5 e3 228 e5 e3 229 e5 e3 230 e5 e3 231 e5 e3 232 e5 e3 233 e5 e3 234 e5 e3 235 e5 e3 236 e5 e3 237 e5 e3 238 e5 e3 239 e5 e3 240 e5 e3 241 e5 e3 242 e5 e3 243 e5 e3 244 e5 e3 245 e5 e3 246 e5 e3 247 e5 e3 248 e5 e3 249 e5 e3 250 e5 e3 251 e5 e3 252 e5 e3 253 e5 e3 254 e5 e3 255 e5 e3 256 e5 e3 257 e5 e3 258 e5 e3 259 e5 e3 260 e5 e3 261 e5 e3 262 e5 e3 263 e5 e3 264 e5 e3 265 e5 e3 266 e5 e3 267 e5 e3 268 e5 e3 269 e5 e3 270 e5 e3 271 e5 e3 272 e5 e3 273 e5 e3 274 e5 e3 275 e5 e3 276 e5 e3 277 e5 e3 278 e5 e3 279 e5 e3 280 e5 e3 281 e5 e3 282 e5 e3 283 e5 e3 284 e5 e3 285 e5 e3 286 e5 e3 287 e5 e3 288 e5 e3 289 e5 e3 290 e5 e3 291 e5 e3 292 e5 e3 293 e5 e3 294 e5 e3 295 e5 e3 296 e5 e3 297 e5 e3 298 e5 e3 299 e5 e3 300 e5 e3 301 e5 e3 302 e5 e3 303 e5 e3 304 e5 e3 305 e5 e3 306 e5 e3 307 e5 e3 308 e5 e3 309 e5 e3 310 e5 e3 311 e5 e3 312 e5 e3 313 e5 e3 314 e5 e3 315 e5 e3 316 e5 e3 317 e5 e3 318 e5 e3 319 e5 e3 320 e5 e3 321 e5 e3 322 e5 e3 323 e5 e3 324 e5 e3 325 e5 e3 326 e5 e3 327 e5 e3 328 e5 e3 329 e5 e3 330 e5 e3 331 e5 e3 332 e5 e3 333 e5 e3 334 e5 e3 335 e5 e3 336 e5 e3 337 e5 e3 338 e5 e3 339 e5 e3 340 e5 e3 341 e5 e3 342 e5 e3 343 e5 e3 344 e5 e3 345 e5 e3 346 e5 e3 347 e5 e3 348 e5 e3 349 e5 e3 350 e5 e3 351 e5 e3 352 e5 e3 353 e5 e3 354 e5 e3 355 e5 e3 356 e5 e3 357 e5 e3 358 e5 e3 359 e5 e3 360 e5 e3 361 e5 e3 362 e5 e3 363 e5 e3 364 e5 e3 365 e5 e3 366 e5 e3 367 e5 e3 368 e5 e3 369 e5 e3 370 e5 e3 371 e5 e3 372 e5 e3 373 e5 e3 374 e5 e3 375 e5 e3 376 e5 e3 377 e5 e3 378 e5 e3 379 e5 e3 380 e5 e3 381 e5 e3 382 e5 e3 383 e5 e3 384 e5 e3 385 e5 e3 386 e5 e3 387 e5 e3 388 e5 e3 389 e5 e3 390 e5 e3 391 e5 e3 392 e5 e3 393 e5 e3 394 e5 e3 395 e5 e3 396 e5 e3 397 e5 e3 398 e5 e3 399 e5 e3 400 e5 e3 401 e5 e3 402 e5 e3 403 e5 e3 404 e5 e3 405 e5 e3 406 e5 e3 407 e5 e3 408 e5 e3 409 e5 e3 410 e5 e3 411 e5 e3 412 e5 e3 413 e5 e3 414 e5 e3 415 e5 e3 416 e5 e3 417 e5 e3 418 e5 e3 419 e5 e3 420 e5 e3 421 e5 e3 422 e5 e3 423 e5 e3 424 e5 e3 425 e5 e3 426 e5 e3 427 e5 e3 428 e5 e3 429 e5 e3 430 e5 e3 431 e5 e3 432 e5 e3 433 e5 e3 434 e5 e3 435 e5 e3 436 e5 e3 437 e5 e3 438 e5 e3 439 e5 e3 440 e5 e3 441 e5 e3 442 e5 e3 443 e5 e3 444 e5 e3 445 e5 e3 446 e5 e3 447 e5 e3 448 e5 e3 449 e5 e3 450 e5 e3 451 e5 e3 452 e5 e3 453 e5 e3 454 e5 e3 455 e5 e3 456 e5 e3 457 e5 e3 458 e5 e3 459 e5 e3 460 e5 e3 461 e5 e3 462 e5 e3 463 e5 e3 464 e5 e3 465 e5 e3 466 e5 e3 467 e5 e3 468 e5 e3 469 e5 e3 470 e5 e3 471 e5 e3 472 e5 e3 473 e5 e3 474 e5 e3 475 e5 e3 476 e5 e3 477 e5 e3 478 e5 e3 479 e5 e3 480 e5 e3 481 e5 e3 482 e5 e3 483 e5 e3 484 e5 e3 485 e5 e3 486 e5 e3 487 e5 e3 488 e5 e3 489 e5 e3 490 e5 e3 491 e5 e3 492 e5 e3 493 e5 e3 494 e5 e3 495 e5 e3 496 e5 e3 497 e5 e3 498 e5 e3 499 e5 e3 500 e5 e3 501 e5 e3 502 e5 e3 503 e5 e3 504 e5 e3 505 e5 e3 506 e5 e3 507 e5 e3 508 e5 e3 509 e5 e3 510 e5 e3 511 e5 e3 512 e5 e3 513 e5 e3 514 e5 e3 515 e5 e3 516 e5 e3 517 e5 e3 518 e5 e3 519 e5 e3 520 e5 e3 521 e5 e3 522 e5 e3 523 e5 e3 524 e5 e3 525 e5 e3 526 e5 e3 527 e5 e3 528 e5 e3 529 e5 e3 530 e5 e3 531 e5 e3 532 e5 e3 533 e5 e3 534 e5 e3 535 e5 e3 536 e5 e3 537 e5 e3 538 e5 e3 539 e5 e3 540 e5 e3 541 e5 e3 542 e5 e3 543 e5 e3 544 e5 e3 545 e5 e3 546 e5 e3 547 e5 e3 548 e5 e3 549 e5 e3 550 e5 e3 551 e5 e3 552 e5 e3 553 e5 e3 554 e5 e3 555 e5 e3 556 e5 e3 557 e5 e3 558 e5 e3 559 e5 e3 560 e5 e3 561 e5 e3 562 e5 e3 563 e5 e3 564 e5 e3 565 e5 e3 566 e5 e3 567 e5 e3 568 e5 e3 569 e5 e3 570 e5 e3 571 e5 e3 572 e5 e3 573 e5 e3 574 e5 e3 575 e5 e3 576 e5 e3 577 e5 e3 578 e5 e3 579 e5 e3 580 e5 e3 581 e5 e3 582 e5 e3 583 e5 e3 584 e5 e3 585 e5 e3 586 e5 e3 587 e5 e3 588 e5 e3 589 e5 e3 590 e5 e3 591 e5 e3 592 e5 e3 593 e5 e3 594 e5 e3 595 e5 e3 596 e5 e3 597 e5 e3 598 e5 e3 599 e5 e3 600 e5 e3 601 e5 e3 602 e5 e3 603 e5 e3 604 e5 e3 605 e5 e3 606 e5 e3 607 e5 e3 608 e5 e3 609 e5 e3 610 e5 e3 611 e5 e3 612 e5 e3 613 e5 e3 614 e5 e3 615 e5 e3 616 e5 e3 617 e5 e3 618 e5 e3 619 e5 e3 620 e5 e3 621 e5 e3 622 e5 e3 623 e5 e3 624 e5 e3 625 e5 e3 626 e5 e3 627 e5 e3 628 e5 e3 629 e5 e3 630 e5 e3 631 e5 e3 632 e5 e3 633 e5 e3 634 e5 e3 635 e5 e3 636 e5 e3 637 e5 e3 638 e5 e3 639 e5 e3 640 e5 e3 641 e5 e3 642 e5 e3 643 e5 e3 644 e5 e3 645 e5 e3 646 e5 e3 647 e5 e3 648 e5 e3 649 e5 e3 650 e5 e3 651 e5 e3 652 e5 e3 653 e5 e3 654 e5 e3 655 e5 e3 656 e5 e3 657 e5 e3 658 e5 e3 659 e5 e3 660 e5 e3 661 e5 e3 662 e5 e3 663 e5 e3 664 e5 e3 665 e5 e3 666 e5 e3 667 e5 e3 668 e5 e3 669 e5 e3 670 e5 e3 671 e5 e3 672 e5 e3 673 e5 e3 674 e5 e3 675 e5 e3 676 e5 e3 677 e5 e3 678 e5 e3 679 e5 e3 680 e5 e3 681 e5 e3 682 e5 e3 683 e5 e3 684 e5 e3 685 e5 e3 686 e5 e3 687 e5 e3 688 e5 e3 689 e5 e3 690 e5 e3 691 e5 e3 692 e5 e3 693 e5 e3 694 e5 e3 695 e5 e3 696 e5 e3 697 e5 e3 698 e5 e3 699 e5 e3 700 e5 e3 701 e5 e3 702 e5 e3 703 e5 e3 704 e5 e3 705 e5 e3 706 e5 e3 707 e5 e3 708 e5 e3 709 e5 e3 710 e5 e3 711 e5 e3 712 e5 e3 713 e5 e3 714 e5 e3 715 e5 e3 716 e5 e3 717 e5 e3 718 e5 e3 719 e5 e3 720 e5 e3 721 e5 e3 722 e5 e3 723 e5 e3 724 e5 e3 725 e5 e3 726 e5 e3 727 e5 e3 728 e5 e3 729 e5 e3 730 e5 e3 731 e5 e3 732 e5 e3 733 e5 e3 734 e5 e3 735 e5 e3 736 e5 e3 737 e5 e3 738 e5 e3 739 e5 e3 740 e5 e3 741 e5 e3 742 e5 e3 743 e5 e3 744 e5 e3 745 e5 e3 746 e5 e3 747 e5 e3 748 e5 e3 749 e5 e3 750 e5 e3 751 e5 e3 752 e5 e3 753 e5 e3 754 e5 e3 755 e5 e3 756 e5 e3 757 e5 e3 758 e5 e3 759 e5 e3 760 e5 e3 761 e5 e3 762 e5 e3 763 e5 e3 764 e5 e3 765 e5 e3 766 e5 e3 767 e5 e3 768 e5 e3 769 e5 e3 770 e5 e3 771 e5 e3 772 e5 e3 773 e5 e3 774 e5 e3 775 e5 e3 776 e5 e3 777 e5 e3 778 e5 e3 779 e5 e3 780 e5 e3 781 e5 e3 782 e5 e3 783 e5 e3 784 e5 e3 785 e5 e3 786 e5 e3 787 e5 e3 788 e5 e3 789 e5 e3 790 e5 e3 791 e5 e3 792 e5 e3 793 e5 e3 794 e5 e3 795 e5 e3 796 e5 e3 797 e5 e3 798 e5 e3 799 e5 e3 800 e5 e3 801 e5 e3 802 e5 e3 803 e5 e3 804 e5 e3 805 e5 e3 806 e5 e3 807 e5 e3 808 e5 e3 809 e5 e3 810 e5 e3 811 e5 e3 812 e5 e3 813 e5 e3 814 e5 e3 815 e5 e3 816 e5 e3 817 e5 e3 818 e5 e3 819 e5 e3 820 e5 e3 821 e5 e3 822 e5 e3 823 e5 e3 824 e5 e3 825 e5 e3 826 e5 e3 827 e5 e3 828 e5 e3 829 e5 e3 830 e5 e3 831 e5 e3 832 e5 e3 833 e5 e3 834 e5 e3 835 e5 e3 836 e5 e3 837 e5 e3 838 e5 e3 839 e5 e3 840 e5 e3 841 e5 e3 842 e5 e3 843 e5 e3 844 e5 e3 845 e5 e3 846 e5 e3 847 e5 e3 848 e5 e3 849 e5 e3 850 e5 e3 851 e5 e3 852 e5 e3 853 e5 e3 854 e5 e3 855 e5 e3 856 e5 e3 857 e5 e3 858 e5 e3 859 e5 e3 860 e5 e3 861 e5 e3 862 e5 e3 863 e5 e3 864 e5 e3 865 e5 e3 866 e5 e3 867 e5 e3 868 e5 e3 869 e5 e3 870 e5 e3 871 e5 e3 872 e5 e3 873 e5 e3 874 e5 e3 875 e5 e3 876 e5 e3 877 e5 e3 878 e5 e3 879 e5 e3 880 e5 e3 881 e5 e3 882 e5 e3 883 e5 e3 884 e5 e3 885 e5 e3 886 e5 e3 887 e5 e3 888 e5 e3 889 e5 e3 890 e5 e3 891 e5 e3 892 e5 e3 893 e5 e3 894 e5 e3 895 e5 e3 896 e5 e3 897 e5 e3 898 e5 e3 899 e5 e3 900 e5 e3 901 e5 e3 902 e5 e3 903 e5 e3 904 e5 e3 905 e5 e3 906 e5 e3 907 e5 e3 908 e5 e3 909 e5 e3 910 e5 e3 911 e5 e3 912 e5 e3 913 e5 e3 914 e5 e3 915 e5 e3 916 e5 e3 917 e5 e3 918 e5 e3 919 e5 e3 920 e5 e3 921 e5 e3 922 e5 e3 923 e5 e3 924 e5 e3 925 e5 e3 926 e5 e3 927 e5 e3 928 e5 e3 929 e5 e3 930 e5 e3 931 e5 e3 932 e5 e3 933 e5 e3 934 e5 e3 935 e5 e3 936 e5 e3 937 e5 e3 938 e5 e3 939 e5 e3 940 e5 e3 941 e5 e3 942 e5 e3 943 e5 e3 944 e5 e3 945 e5 e3 946 e5 e3 947 e5 e3 948 e5 e3 949 e5 e3 950 e5 e3 951 e5 e3 952 e5 e3 953 e5 e3 954 e5 e3 955 e5 e3 956 e5 e3 957 e5 e3 958 e5 e3 959 e5 e3 960 e5 e3 961 e5 e3 962 e5 e3 963 e5 e3 964 e5 e3 965 e5 e3 966 e5 e3 967 e5 e3 968 e5 e3 969 e5 e3 970 e5 e3 971 e5 e3 972 e5 e3 973 e5 e3 974 e5 e3 975 e5 e3 976 e5 e3 977 e5 e3 978 e5 e3 979 e5 e3 980 e5 e3 981 e5 e3 982 e5 e3 983 e5 e3 984 e5 e3 985 e5 e3 986 e5 e3 987 e5 e3 988 e5 e3 989 e5 e3 990 e5 e3 991 e5 e3 992 e5 e3 993 e5 e3 994 e5 e3 995 e5 e3 996 e5 e3 997 e5 e3 998 e5 e3 999 e5 e3 1000 e5 e3 1001 e5 e3 1002 e5 e3 1003 e5 e3 1004 e5 e3 1005 e5 e3 1006 e5 e3 1007 e5 e3 1008 e5 e3 1009 e5 e3 1010 e5 e3 1011 e5 e3 1012 e5 e3 1013 e5 e3 1014 e5 e3 1015 e5 e3 1016 e5 e3 1017 e5 e3 1018 e5 e3 1019 e5 e3 1020 e5 e3 1021 e5 e3 1022 e5 e3 1023 e5 e3 1024 e5 e3 1025 e5 e3 1026 e5 e3 1027 e5 e3 1028 e5 e3 1029 e5 e3 1030 e5 e3 1031 e5 e3 1032 e5 e3 1033 e5 e3 1034 e5 e3 1035 e5 e3 1036 e5 e3 1037 e5 e3 1038 e5 e3 1039 e5 e3 1040 e5 e3 1041 e5 e3 1042 e5 e3 1043 e5 e3 1044 e5 e3 1045 e5 e3 1046 e5 e3 1047 e5 e3 1048 e5 e3 1049 e5 e3 1050 e5 e3 1051 e5 e3 1052 e5 e3 1053 e5 e3 1054 e5 e3 1055 e5 e3 1056 e5 e3 1057 e5 e3 1058 e5 e3 1059 e5 e3 1060 e5 e3 1061 e5 e3 1062 e5 e3 1063 e5 e3 1064 e5 e3 1065 e5 e3 1066 e5 e3 1067 e5 e3 1068 e5 e3 1069 e5 e3 1070 e5 e3 1071 e5 e3 1072 e5 e3 1073 e5 e3 1074 e5 e3 1075 e5 e3 1076 e5 e3 1077 e5 e3 1078 e5 e3 1079 e5 e3 1080 e5 e3 1081 e5 e3 1082 e5 e3 1083 e5 e3 1084 e5 e3 1085 e5 e3 1086 e5 e3 1087 e5 e3 1088 e5 e3 1089 e5 e3 1090 e5 e3 1091 e5 e3 1092 e5 e3 1093 e5 e3 1094 e5 e3 1095 e5 e3 1096 e5 e3 1097 e5 e3 1098 e5 e3 1099 e5 e3 1100 e5 e3 1101 e5 e3 1102 e5 e3 1103 e5 e3 1104 e5 e3 1105 e5 e3 1106 e5 e3 1107 e5 e3 1108 e5 e3 1109 e5 e3 1110 e5 e3 1111 e5 e3 1112 e5 e3 1113 e5 e3 1114 e5 e3 1115 e5 e3 1116 e5 e3 1117 e5 e3 1118 e5 e3 1119 e5 e3 1120 e5 e3 1121 e5 e3 1122 e5 e3 1123 e5 e3 1124 e5 e3 1125 e5 e3 1126 e5 e3 1127 e5 e3 1128 e5 e3 1129 e5 e3 1130 e5 e3 1131 e5 e3 1132 e5 e3 1133 e5 e3 1134 e5 e3 1135 e5 e3 1136 e5 e3 1137 e5 e3 1138 e5 e3 1139 e5 e3 1140 e5 e3 1141 e5 e3 1142 e5 e3 1143 e5 e3 1144 e5 e3 1145 e5 e3 1146 e5 e3 1147 e5 e3 1148 e5 e3 1149 e5 e3 1150 e5 e3 1151 e5 e3 1152 e5 e3 1153 e5 e3 1154 e5 e3 1155 e5 e3 1156 e5 e3 1157 e5 e3 1158 e5 e3 1159 e5 e3 1160 e5 e3 1161 e5 e3 1162 e5 e3 1163 e5 e3 1164 e5 e3 1165 e5 e3 1166 e5 e3 1167 e5 e3 1168 e5 e3 1169 e5 e3 1170 e5 e3 1171 e5 e3 1172 e5 e3 1173 e5 e3 1174 e5 e3 1175 e5 e3 1176 e5 e3 1177 e5 e3 1178 e5 e3 1179 e5 e3 1180 e5 e3 1181 e5 e3 1182 e5 e3 1183 e5 e3 1184 e5 e3 1185 e5 e3 1186 e5 e3 1187 e5 e3 1188 e5 e3 1189 e5 e3 1190 e5 e3 1191 e5 e3 1192 e5 e3 1193 e5 e3 1194 e5 e3 1195 e5 e3 1196 e5 e3 1197 e5 e3 1198 e5 e3 1199 e5 e3 1200 e5 e3 1201 e5 e3 1202 e5 e3 1203 e5 e3 1204 e5 e3 1205 e5 e3 1206 e5 e3 1207 e5 e3 1208 e5 e3 1209 e5 e3 1210 e5 e3 1211 e5 e3 1212 e5 e3 1213 e5 e3 1214 e5 e3 1215 e5 e3 1216 e5 e3 1217 e5 e3 1218 e5 e3 1219 e5 e3 1220 e5 e3 1221 e5 e3 1222 e5 e3 1223 e5 e3 1224 e5 e3 1225 e5 e3 1226 e5 e3 1227 e5 e3 1228 e5 e3 1229 e5 e3 1230 e5 e3 1231 e5 e3 1232 e5 e3 1233 e5 e3 1234 e5 e3 1235 e5 e3 1236 e5 e3 1237 e5 e3 1238 e5 e3 1239 e5 e3 1240 e5 e3 1241 e5 e3 1242 e5 e3 1243 e5 e3 1244 e5 e3 1245 e5 e3 1246 e5 e3 1247 e5 e3 1248 e5 e3 1249 e5 e3 1250 e5 e3 1251 e5 e3 1252 e5 e3 1253 e5 e3 1254 e5 e3 1255 e5 e3 1256 e5 e3 1257 e5 e3 1258 e5 e3 1259 e5 e3 1260 e5 e3 1261 e5 e3 1262 e5 e3 1263 e5 e3 1264 e5 e3 1265 e5 e3 1266 e5 e3 1267 e5 e3 1268 e5 e3 1269 e5 e3 1270 e5 e3 1271 e5 e3 1272 e5 e3 1273 e5 e3 1274 e5 e3 1275 e5 e3 1276 e5 e3 1277 e5 e3 1278 e5 e3 1279 e5 e3 1280 e5 e3 1281 e5 e3 1282 e5 e3 1283 e5 e3 1284 e5 e3 1285 e5 e3 1286 e5 e3 1287 e5 e3 1288 e5 e3 1289 e5 e3 1290 e5 e3 1291 e5 e3 1292 e5 e3 1293 e5 e3 1294 e5 e3 1295 e5 e3 1296 e5 e3 1297 e5 e3 1298 e5 e3 1299 e5 e3 1300 e5 e3 1301 e5 e3 1302 e5 e3 1303 e5 e3 1304 e5 e3 1305 e5 e3 1306 e5 e3 1307 e5 e3 1308 e5 e3 1309 e5 e3 1310 e5 e3 1311 e5 e3 1312 e5 e3 1313 e5 e3 1314 e5 e3 1315 e5 e3 1316 e5 e3 1317 e5 e3 1318 e5 e3 1319 e5 e3 1320 e5 e3 1321 e5 e3 1322 e5 e3 1323 e5 e3 1324 e5 e3 1325 e5 e3 1326 e5 e3 1327 e5 e3 1328 e5 e3 1329 e5 e3 1330 e5 e3 1331 e5 e3 1332 e5 e3 1333 e5 e3 1334 e5 e3 1335 e5 e3 1336 e5 e3 1337 e5 e3 1338 e5 e3 1339 e5 e3 1340 e5 e3 1341 e5 e3 1342 e5 e3 1343 e5 e3 1344 e5 e3 1345 e5 e3 1346 e5 e3 1347 e5 e3 1348 e5 e3 1349 e5 e3 1350 e5 e3 1351 e5 e3 1352 e5 e3 1353 e5 e3 1354 e5 e3 1355 e5 e3 1356 e5 e3 1357 e5 e3 1358 e5 e3 1359 e5 e3 1360 e5 e3 1361 e5 e3 1362 e5 e3 1363 e5 e3 1364 e5 e3 1365 e5 e3 1366 e5 e3 1367 e5 e3 1368 e5 e3

14 ♖g5 ♙xe3 15 ♜xe3 ♜xe5 16 ♜ad1 ♜e7 17 ♜xe4 with advantage for White, Tal-Korchnoi, Brussels 1987) 12 ♜xd2 d4 13 ♙g5 ♜d7 with unclear play, Schmidt-Korchnoi, Lucerne OL 1982, or 11 ♜d1 ♙xe3 12 ♜xe3 ♜e7 13 ♜bd2 ♜f5 14 ♜e2 ♜xd2 15 ♜xd2 c6 = Kr.Georgiev-Grivas, Athens 1983.

11...♜e7? (D)

A pointless and bad move. Black should choose 11...♙xe3 12 ♜xe3 ♜e7 or 11...f6!?, with a satisfactory position.



12 ♜d1 ♜ad8 13 ♙xc5 ♜xc5?!

Although the black queen has nothing to do on the c5-square, 13...♜xc5 should be preferred.

14 ♜d4! ♜xd4

White will obtain the advantage in all cases, but Black could have continued with 14...♜b8 15 ♙c2 ♜cd7 16 b4.

15 cxd4 ♜xb3

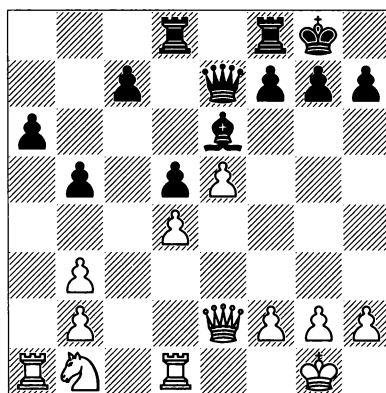
After 15...♜b7 16 ♜c3 White is again better.

16 axb3 (D)

It is clear that something has gone wrong for Black, as the opening has concluded with a clear advantage for White, who has a strategically won position due to his superior minor piece and Black's extremely weakened queenside (a- and c-files, outpost on c5). Furthermore, it is obvious that Black does not have the time to protect his a-pawn, as 16...♜a8? 17 ♜c1 ♜fc8 18 ♜c5! would deny him any counterplay. Thus, accepting the difficulty of his position, he immediately seeks chances where he can develop some kind of initiative, i.e. the centre.

16...c5! 17 ♜xa6 cxd4 18 ♜a3!

B



The careless 18 ♜xd4?! ♜c5 19 ♜d2 (19 ♜d1 d4!) 19...♜c8 20 ♜c3 b4 21 ♜e2 ♜c2! gives Black satisfactory counterplay, while 18 ♜xb5? is simply bad due to 18...♙c8! 19 ♜a1 ♜xe5.

18...d3!

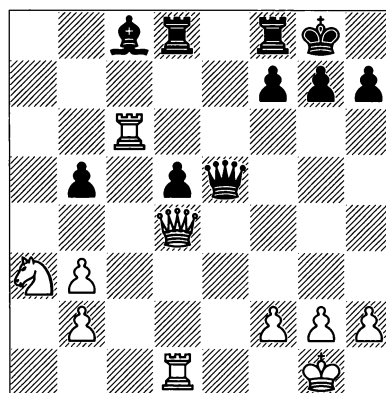
This continuation is obligatory, as White was threatening ♜c2xd4 (or ♜b5xd4), with a strategically won position. Black is trying to disturb the harmony among the white pieces.

19 ♜xd3

The correct reaction, as in case of 19 ♜xd3? b4! 20 ♜c2 ♙f5 21 ♜d2 ♙xc2 22 ♜xc2 d4 Black would enjoy a very decent position.

19...♙c8 20 ♜c6 ♜xe5 21 ♜d4! (D)

B



The endgame would be clearly superior for White and his effort to reach it is understandable and correct. The exchange of queens would forestall Black's counterplay, so he cannot agree to it.

21...♖g5 22 h4 ♗h5 23 ♘xb5

Despite all of Black's efforts, White has reacted correctly and retains a strategically won position and an extra pawn.

23...♙e6

23...♙d7 24 ♜c5 ♙xb5 25 ♜xb5 is hopeless for Black.

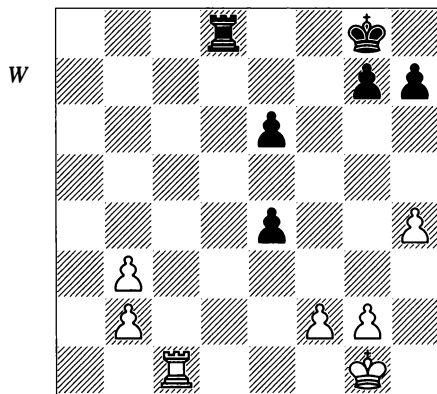
24 ♘c7 ♗e2 25 ♜cc1 ♗e4!? 26 ♗xe4?

An alluring but mistaken move. Black correctly sought salvation in a rook ending, but White should not have complied and should have played 26 b4 instead, with a won position. Black can now breathe!

26...dxe4 27 ♘xe6 fxe6 28 ♜xd8

The alternative was 28 ♙f1 ♜xd1+ 29 ♜xd1 ♜b8!.

28...♜xd8 (D)



29 ♜c4

Nothing would change after 29 ♜c2 ♜d3!.

29...♜d1+! 30 ♙h2 ♜d2 31 ♙g3

Black will also hold the draw after 31 ♜xe4 ♜xb2 32 b4 ♙f7.

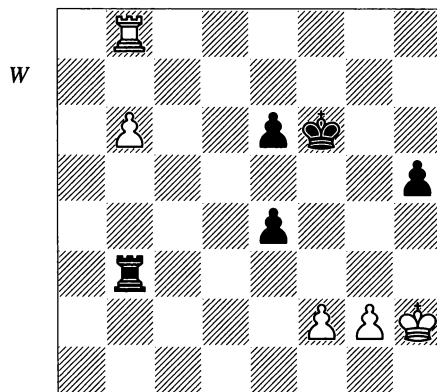
31...♜xb2 32 b4 ♜e2 33 ♜c3 ♜b2 34 ♜c4 ♜e2 35 b5 ♜b2 36 ♜c5 ♙f7 37 ♜c7+ ♙f6 38 ♜b7 h5!

Tightening the net around the white king, not allowing it to cross over to the queenside. Black has achieved his aim!

39 b6 g5! 40 hxg5+ ♙xg5 41 ♜b8 ♜b3+ 42 ♙h2 ♙f6 (D)

Forced in view of the threatened 43 b7. White cannot make progress and just 'tests' Black's endgame knowledge for a few more moves. Black succeeded in saving the game by

proving creative at the critical moments and posing White multiple problems. Naturally, nothing would have happened without White's help, but at least Black gave himself the best possible chance.



43 g3 ♜b1 44 ♙h3 ♜h1+ 45 ♙g2 ♜b1 46 b7 ♙g7 47 ♙h2 ♙h7 48 ♙h3 ♜h1+ 49 ♙g2 ♜b1 50 g4 hxg4 51 ♙g3 ♜b4 52 ♙f4 ♙g7 53 ♙e3 e5 54 ♜e8 ♜xb7 55 ♜xe5 1/2-1/2

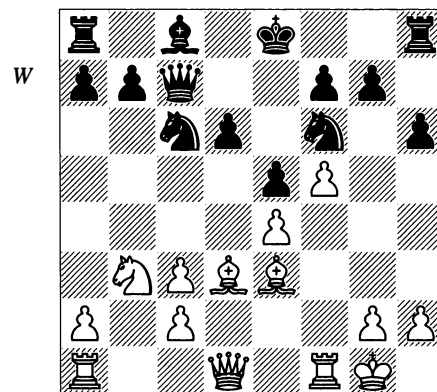
Cela – Grivas

Kalavryta 1997

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♗b6 5 ♘b3 ♘f6 6 ♘c3 e6 7 ♙e3 ♗c7 8 f4 ♙b4 9 ♙d3 ♙xc3+ 10 bxc3 d6 11 0-0 e5 12 f5?!

For the details on the opening the reader is referred to the game Vouldis-Grivas, Rodos 1993, analysed in Volume 1 of this series.

12...h6! (D)



13 ♖f3

In the game Radulov-Vragoteris, Kavala 1991, White preferred 13 c4 b6 14 ♖f3 ♘b8 15 ♜fd1 ♘bd7 16 a4 a5 17 ♘d2 ♙b7 18 ♘b1 ♙a6 19 ♘a3 ♘c5 20 ♘b5 ♙xb5 21 axb5 ♙e7 with unclear play.

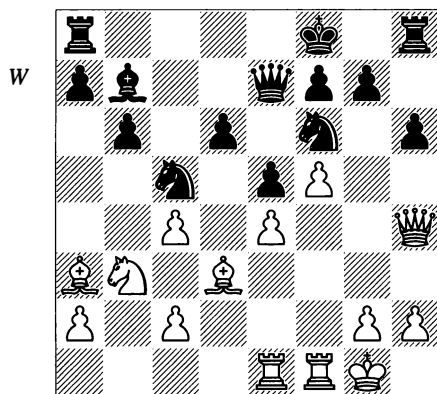
13...b6 14 ♖g3 ♙f8 15 ♙c1?!

There also exists the suggestion of Avshalumov, the direct 15 ♖f3 ♙b7 16 g4 ♘b8 17 h4 ♘bd7. The plan followed by White, involving the transfer of the dark-squared bishop to the a3-f8 diagonal, is mistaken.

15...♘b8! 16 ♙a3

Black won in Rogers-Avshalumov, Belgrade 1989 after 16 a4 ♘bd7 17 a5 ♙b7 18 axb6 axb6 19 ♜xa8+ ♙xa8 20 ♙a3 ♙xe4.

16...♘bd7 17 ♜a1 ♘c5 18 ♖h4 ♙b7 19 c4 ♖e7! (D)



Black has developed harmoniously and is ready to apply pressure on White's weak pawn-structure. Of course he still has some problems with the placement of his king but, as White cannot approach it, there is no immediate danger.

20 ♘d2 ♜c8 21 g4 ♘fd7 22 ♖g3 ♙e8!

The black king finds a safe haven on the queenside, while White is lacking a dangerous plan. The balance is clearly shifting in Black's favour.

23 ♘b1 ♘a4

Black even prevents White's simple plan of ♘c3-d5, although it wouldn't offer anything special.

24 ♙c1 ♙d8 25 g5?!

White's only plan was the advance of his kingside pawns with h4.

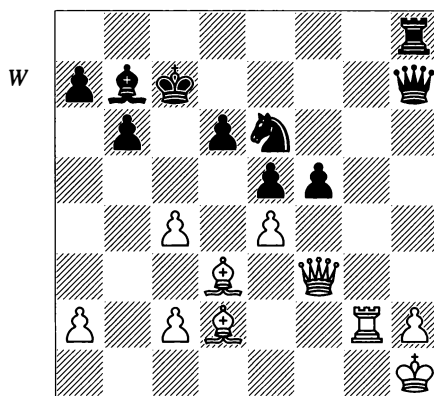
25...hxc5 26 ♙xc5 f6 27 ♙d2 ♙c7 28 ♜f2 ♜cg8!

Black has completed the safeguarding of his king and now prepares his plan of counterattack against the white monarch. White is unable to react as his pieces lack harmony and no plan is available to him.

29 ♙h1 g6! 30 fxc6 ♘f8 31 ♖f3 ♜xc6 32 ♘c3 ♘xc3 33 ♙xc3 ♘e6 34 ♙d2 ♖g7 35 ♜g2

Forced, as otherwise the threatened 35...♜g8 would be decisive.

35...f5! 36 ♜eg1 ♜xg2 37 ♜xg2 ♖h7 (D)



Black's position is won as, besides his positional plus, his tactical superiority is crushing. In other words, even if Black fails to mate then he will win the ending! During the game I was wondering (once again!) why my opponent was continuing the game.

38 ♖e3!? ♘f4! 39 ♜f2 fxe4?

39...♘xd3! 40 cxd3 fxe4 would end the game immediately.

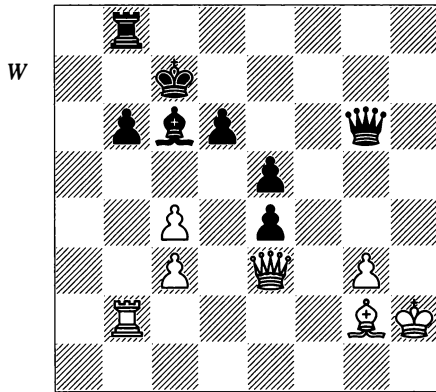
40 ♙f1 ♖g6 41 ♙e1!

White regroupes his remaining pieces, simply aiming to trouble Black as much as possible, hoping for mistakes.

41...♜g8 42 ♜d2 ♜f8 43 ♙g3 ♘h5 44 ♙g2 ♘xg3+ 45 hxg3 ♜h8+ 46 ♙g1 ♖h7 47 ♜f2 ♖g6 48 a4!

While Black is wandering about aimlessly in his won position, White uses all his forces to attack the black king, which is anyway his only approachable target.

48...♖g8 49 a5! ♙c6 50 ♖h2 ♖b7 51 axb6
axb6 52 c3! ♖c7 53 ♖b2 ♖b8 (D)



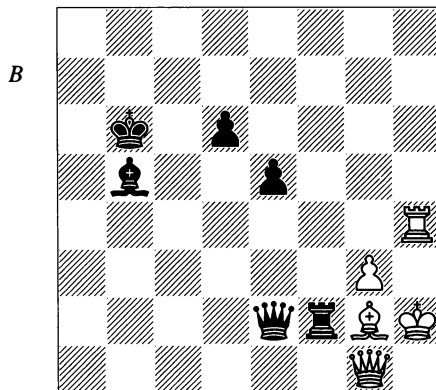
The first good sign for White, having forced Black to turn to defensive duties.

54 ♖e2 ♖e6 55 ♖g5 ♖g8 56 ♖h4 ♖xc4 57 ♖h7+ ♙d7 58 ♖xe4 ♖a2 59 c4 ♖f8 60 ♖h4!
Suddenly White's threats have grown (61 ♖e4 and 62 ♖h7!).

60...♖e2 61 c5! ♖f2

61...bxc5 62 ♖a4 would be extremely risky for Black.

62 cxb6+ ♖xb6 63 ♖b1+ ♙b5 64 ♖g1 (D)



64...♖b2?

Black lost his calm and missed the simple 64...♖f1!, after which he would win without much effort. In any case, White had done his best, constantly creating problems and threats. Black had consumed a lot of time and was already facing serious time-trouble. The next few

moves were played in a flash. White, having the psychological advantage since he practically had gone to hell and back, did not encounter any difficulties in gaining victory! A triumph of persistent defence and faith in the position's hidden possibilities for White. At the same time, a deserved punishment for the arrogance and 'certainty' that Black completely unjustifiably displayed.

65 ♖h1 ♖a5 66 ♖e1+ ♖d2 67 ♖a1+ ♖b6
68 ♖h7 ♖c5?? 69 ♖a3+ ♖d4 70 ♖xd6+ ♖c3
71 ♖xe5+ ♖b4 72 ♖h4+ ♖a5 73 ♖c7+ ♖a6
74 ♖b7+ ♖a7 75 ♖c6+ ♖a6 76 ♖b7+ 1-0

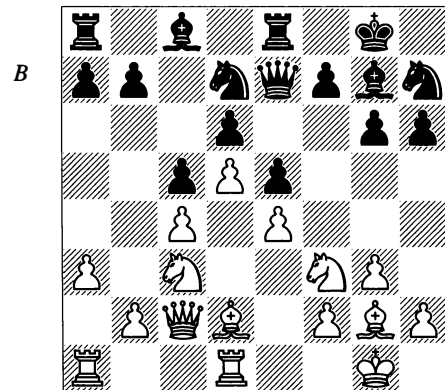
D. Paunović – Grivas

Corfu 1993

1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 c4 ♖g7 4 g3 0-0 5 ♖g2 d6
6 0-0 ♖bd7 7 ♖c2 e5 8 ♖d1 ♖e7 9 ♖c3 c6 10
e4 ♖e8

Theory recommends also 10...exd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖e8.

11 d5 c5 12 ♖g5 h6 13 ♖d2 ♖h7 14 a3 (D)



14...♖b6?

This move has no place in Black's plans, which should be directed towards the kingside. The direct 14...♖df8 is better.

15 b3 f5?

Black fails to understand the problems of the position. He should first have played 15...a6.

16 ♖h4! ♖f6 17 ♖b5! ♖e7 18 b4! ♖f7 19
bxc5 dxc5 20 ♖e3

White seized the opportunity and, with accurate moves, has acquired the advantage. In

contrast, Black has not managed to organize even a hint of counterplay.

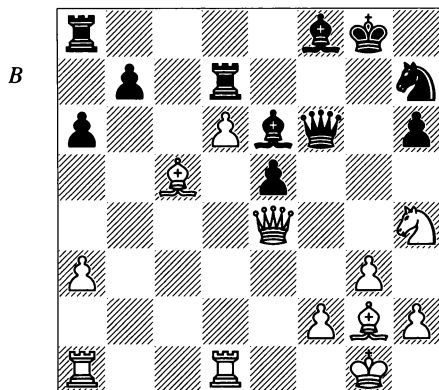
20...a6 21 ♖c3 ♗xc4 22 ♙xc5 ♜c7 23 exf5!

Excellent! White further increases his superiority.

23...gxf5 24 ♗e4 fxe4 25 ♜xc4 ♙f8

25...b6? loses quickly to 26 d6+ ♙e6 27 ♜xe4.

26 d6+ ♙e6 27 ♜b4 ♜d7 28 ♜xe4 (D)



This game was played in the last round of the 1993 international tournament in Corfu, the first tournament I played as a GM. My performance in this particular tournament was generally bad and my mood hardly the best. Still enjoying a morning coffee, I was pondering the problems of my position and became further disappointed. Down on material and full of weaknesses, what an awful position! I should resign and try to enjoy a swim, forgetting about my horrible play. However, I decided to continue the game until I finished my coffee!

28...♜c8 29 ♙e3?

Incomprehensible. 29 ♙b4 was natural. White had obviously counted only on 29...♜xd6? 30 ♜xd6 ♙xd6 31 ♜xb7.

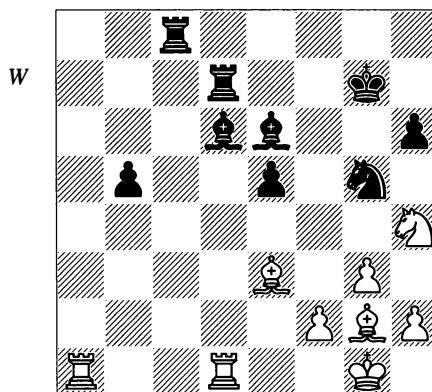
29...♙xd6!

Black has at least equalized the material, but his position remains lost because the weaknesses in his pawn-structure and his exposed king are significant negative factors. In any case, I decided to visit the bar for one more coffee...

30 a4 ♗g5 31 ♜g6+?!

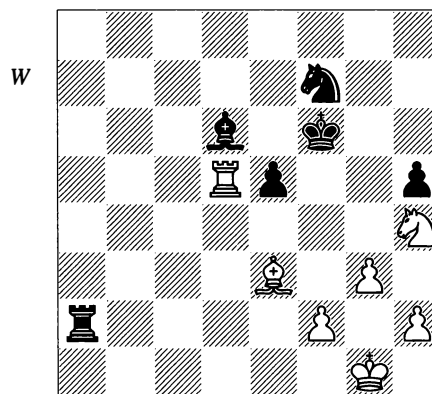
The queen exchange suits the black king. I prefer 31 ♜b1.

31...♜xg6 32 ♗xg6 ♙g7 33 ♗h4 b5 34 axb5 axb5 (D)



Black keeps neutralizing White's advantages. The latter's position remains clearly better (Black has three weak pawns) but has nothing in common with its recent past.

35 ♙d5 ♙f6 36 ♜a6 ♗f7 37 ♙c6 ♜dd8 38 ♙xb5 ♜a8 39 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 40 ♙c6 ♜a6 41 ♙b7 ♜a2 42 ♙d5 ♙xd5 43 ♙xd5 h5 (D)

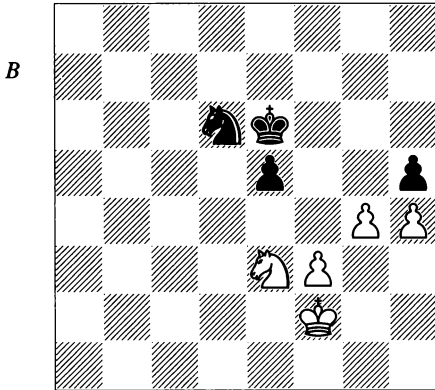


White won a pawn but exchanged several pieces, while also allowing the black rook to become active. Theoretically he retains many winning chances, but at least Black has obeyed his duty and posed stiff resistance.

44 ♗g2 ♙e6 45 ♜b5 ♜a6 46 ♗f3 ♙e7 47 h4 ♙f6 48 ♜b8 ♙f5 49 ♜b7 ♗g6 50 ♗d2 ♗d6 51 ♜d7 ♙c6 52 ♙f3 ♙g7 53 ♙g5 ♗f7 54 ♗e4 ♙h6! 55 ♙xh6 ♗xh6 56 ♜d6+ ♙xd6 57 ♗xd6 ♗g4 58 ♙e2

In the knight ending that has arisen, White retains his winning chances, but Black has many good defensive resources thanks to the limited material.

58...♟f6 59 f3 ♞h6 60 ♟f2 ♟e6 61 ♞c4 ♞f5 62 ♞e3 ♞d6 63 g4?! (D)



Premature. Black immediately seizes the chance.

63...e4! 64 f4

After 64 g5 ♞xf3 65 ♟xf3 ♟e5 White can no longer win.

64...hxg4 65 h5 ♞f5 66 ♞xg4 ♟f7 67 ♞e3 ♞g7 68 h6 ♞h5 69 f5 ♟g8 70 ♞g4 ♟h7 71 ♟e3 ♞g3 72 ♟f4 ♞xf5! 73 ♟xf5 1/2-1/2

White offered a draw in view of 73...e3 74 ♞xe3 ♟xh6, and it was immediately accepted. The half-point I obtained from this game did not substantially affect my tournament standing. My greatest gain was the confirmation of my fighting spirit and my effort for the best.

Grivas – Gelashvili

Porto Carras 1998

1 d4 ♞f6 2 ♞f3 e6 3 g3 c5 4 ♟g2 ♞c6

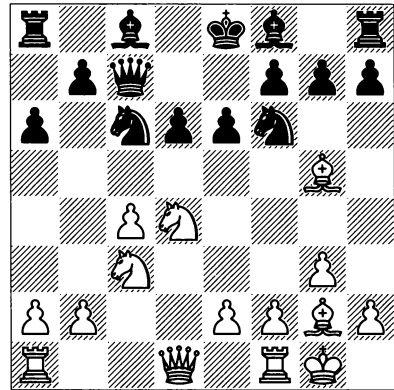
I believe that 4...cxd4 5 0-0 d5 is a better continuation.

5 0-0 a6 6 c4 cxd4 7 ♞xd4 ♟c7 8 ♞c3 d6

8...♞xd4 9 ♟xd4 d6 is inferior; e.g., 10 ♟d3 ♟e7 11 ♟f4 0-0 12 ♞ac1 ♞b8 13 ♞fd1 e5 14 ♟g5 ♟e6 15 ♟xf6 ♟xf6 16 ♟xd6 ♟xd6 17 ♞xd6 ♟xc4 18 ♞b6 ♟e6 19 ♞xb7 ♞xb7 20 ♟xb7 ♞b8 21 ♟xa6 ♞xb2 22 a4 +- Grivas-Jonasson, Reykjavik 1994.

9 ♟g5 (D)

B



9...♟d7?!

Black should prefer 9...♟e7 10 ♞c1 ♞xd4 11 ♟xd4 0-0.

10 ♞c1 ♟b6?

White retains a plus after 10...♞xd4 11 ♟xd4 ♟e7 12 ♞e4! e5 (12...♞xe4? 13 ♟xg7!) 13 ♟e3 but I think that 10...♟e7 11 e4 0-0 12 h3 ♞ac8 13 b3 ± should be preferred.

11 c5!

An excellent idea, securing an advantage for White.

11...dxc5

Black's alternatives were 11...♟xc5? 12 ♟xf6 gxf6 13 ♞xc6 ♟xc6 14 ♞d5! ♟a5 15 b4! ♟d8 16 ♞xf6+ ♟xf6 17 ♞xc6! and 11...♟xb2 12 ♞xc6 ♟xc6 13 ♟xc6+ bxc6 14 ♟xf6 gxf6 15 cxd6.

12 ♞a4 ♟b4

Or 12...♟c7 13 ♞xc5 with advantage for White.

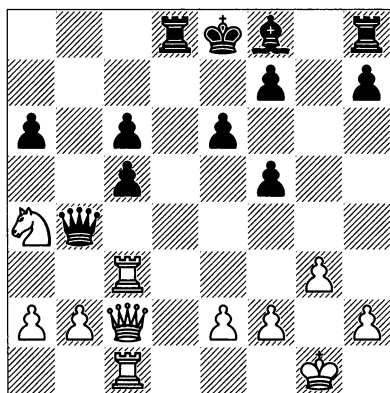
13 ♞xc6 ♟xc6 14 ♟xc6+ bxc6 15 ♟xf6 gxf6 16 ♞c3! ♞d8 17 ♟c2 f5 18 ♞c1 (D)

White's superiority is obvious. He has better development and a clearly healthier pawn-structure. He is temporarily a pawn down, but this will be soon regained; then he will apply pressure on Black's weak queenside pawns. Black cannot continue in a normal way as then, very soon, he will end up in a hopeless situation.

18...h5!? 19 a3?!

The immediate 19 ♞c4! ♟d2 20 ♞xc5 is clearly preferable, as the queen exchange would

B



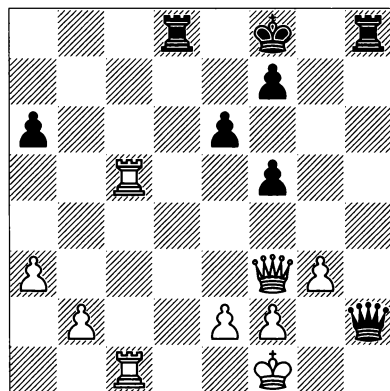
significantly reduce Black's chances for counterplay.

19...Wg4 20 Bc4 Wg6 21 Qxc5 Bxc5 22 Bxc5 h4

Black's counterplay against the white king is now substantial. The threat of opening the h-file and transferring the major pieces there is too strong for White's 'safe' position.

23 Wa4! hxc3 24 hxc3 Wh5 25 Wxc6+ Bf8 26 Wf3! Wh2+ 27 Bf1 Wh1+!? (D)

W



Black opts for a difficult ending, but just the fact that he survived this far can be considered a success!

28 Wxh1 Bxh1+ 29 Bg2 Bxc1 30 Bxc1 Bd2 31 e3

The other option was 31 b4 Ba2! (31...Bxe2 32 Bc5!) 32 Bc3.

31...Bxb2 32 Bc6 Ba2 33 Bxa6

White has every chance of winning this endgame, as the doubled f-pawns do not help

Black. The rest of the game is not of interest here. What is important is that Black showed the desire to fight in a seemingly irredeemable position. After many mistakes (from both sides) the game ended in a draw, rewarding Black on one hand, disappointing White on the other!

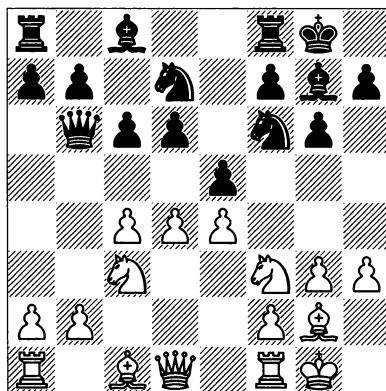
33...Bg7 34 a4 Bf6 35 a5 Bg7 36 Ba8 Bf6 37 a6 Ba1 38 f4 Ba2+ 39 Bf1 Bg7 40 Be1 Bg2 41 Bd1 Bxg3 42 Bd2 Bg2+ 43 Bc3 Ba2 44 Bb4 Bf6 45 Bb5 Be7 46 Bc8 Bb2+ 47 Bc6 Bc2+ 48 Bb7 Bb2+ 49 Ba8 Ba2 50 a7 Bd7 51 Bf8 Bc7 52 Bxf7+ Bc8 53 Bf6 Ba6 54 Bh6 Bd6 55 Bh1 Bc6 56 Bb1 Bc7 57 Bb8 Bc3 58 Bb7+ Bc8 59 Bb6 Bc7 60 Bxe6 Bd3 61 Be7+ Bc6 62 Be8 Bc7 63 Be7+ Bc6 64 Be6+ Bc7 65 Be8 Bd7 66 Bb8 Bd3 67 Bb7+ Bc6 68 Bb2 Bd8+ 69 Bb8 Bd3 70 Bc8+ Bb6 71 Be8 Bc7 1/2-1/2

Dezan – Grivas

Paris 1982

1 d4 Bf6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 Bg7 4 Bg2 0-0 5 Bc3 d6 6 Bf3 Bbd7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4 c6 9 h3 Bb6 (D)

W



The most active continuation at Black's disposal, trying to attack the white centre and especially the d4-square.

10 Be1

White has several worthy alternatives:

a) 10 d5 Bc5 11 Bc1 (11 Bd2 cxd5 12 cxd5 a5 = Pätz-Grivas, Plovdiv 1988) 11...cxd5 12 cxd5 Bd7 13 Bd3 Bxd3 14 Wxd3 Bc8 15 b3 Bh5 16 Be3 Wa5 17 Bfc1 a6 is unclear, K.Vlahos-Grivas, Athens 1982.

b) 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 ♖c2 ♜e8 12 ♙e3 ♖c7 13 ♜fd1 ♙f8 14 ♜ac1 ♙e7 15 a3 ♘c5 16 b4 ♘e6 17 ♖b2 a5 18 ♘d5 cxd5 19 cxd5 ♖b8 20 dxe6 ♙xe6 is equal, Kapelan-Grivas, Vršac 1983.

c) 10 c5 dxc5 11 dxe5 ♘e8 12 e6 fxe6 13 ♘g5 e5 (13...♙e5 14 f4 ♘f7 15 ♘xf7 ♙d4+ 16 ♙h2 ♜xf7 17 e5 ♘c7 18 h4 ♘d5 19 ♘e4 ♖d8 20 h5 ♜f5 is unclear, I.Nikolaidis-Grivas, Athens 1993) 14 ♖e2 ♖a6 15 ♖xa6 bxa6 16 b3 ♘c7 17 ♙a3 h6 18 ♘f3 ♘b5, again with unclear play, Voiska-Grivas, Iraklion 1993.

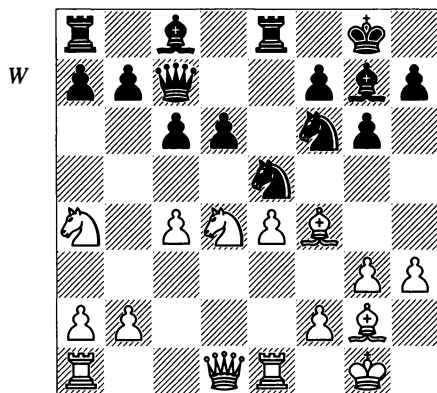
10...exd4 11 ♘xd4 ♜e8 12 ♘a4

I have also faced 12 ♜e2 ♖b4 13 ♜c2 ♘c5 14 a3 ♖b6 15 ♙e3 a5 16 ♖b1 ♖d8 17 f3 ♖e7 18 ♙f2 a4, Psarras-Grivas, Athens 1982, and 12 ♘c2 ♘c5 13 ♜b1 ♘fd7 14 ♙f4 ♙e5 15 ♙f1 a5, Franić-Grivas, Belfort 1982, with unclear play in both cases.

12...♖c7?!

Frightened and passive. 12...♖a6 13 b3 ♘c5 14 ♘c3 ♖b6 15 ♙e3 ♘fd7 16 ♖c2 a5 is more in the spirit of the position (Staniszewski-Grivas, Oakham 1984). 12...♖b4!? leads to great complications.

13 ♙f4 ♙e5 (D)



14 ♜c1?!

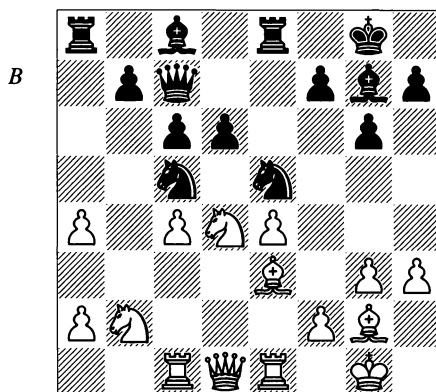
In Stohl-Grivas, Copenhagen jr Wch 1982, White opted for 14 ♖c2 ♘fd7 15 ♜ad1 ♘c5 16 ♜e2 ♘e6 17 ♘xe6 ♙xe6 18 b3 ±.

14...♘fd7 15 b3 ♘c5! 16 ♘b2

Compulsory, as 16 ♘xc5 dxc5 would surrender control of the central squares to Black.

16...a5 17 ♙e3 a4! 18 bxa4 (D)

White has no choice as 18 b4? a3! would be disastrous for him.



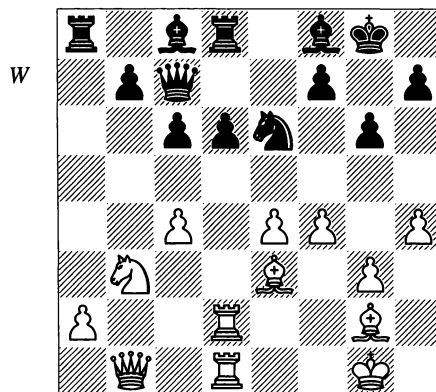
18...♘ed7 19 ♖c2 ♘b6 20 ♜ed1 ♘bxa4 21 ♘xa4 ♘xa4

Black's position is satisfactory. White seeks play against the weak d6-pawn.

22 ♙f4 ♖e7 23 ♖b1 ♘c5 24 ♘b3 ♙e5! 25 ♙e3 ♘e6?

In time-pressure, Black starts playing oddly and without a plan. 25...f5 is better.

26 ♜d2 ♜d8 27 ♜cd1 ♙g7 28 ♙b6 ♜d7 29 ♙e3 ♜d8 30 h4 ♖c7 31 f4 ♙f8 (D)



White's position has suddenly become better and could have been improved further with 32 c5! dxc5 33 ♜xd8 ♘xd8 34 ♘xc5 or even 32 h5!. But White seems not to have a clue about the needs of this position and starts to go astray.

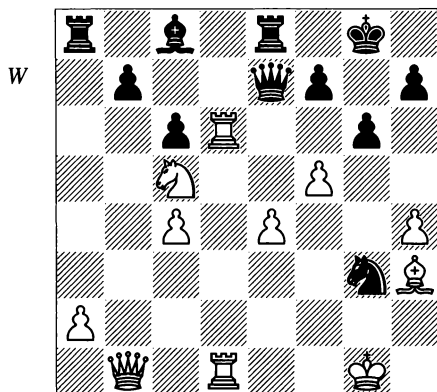
32 ♙h3?! ♘g7 33 f5 ♜e8! 34 ♙f4?

White goes wrong, guided by his blind desire to win the weak d6-pawn. After the correct 34 ♖f2! Black is suffering.

34...♘h5!

Black need not protect the d6-pawn. More important is the white king and the initiative.

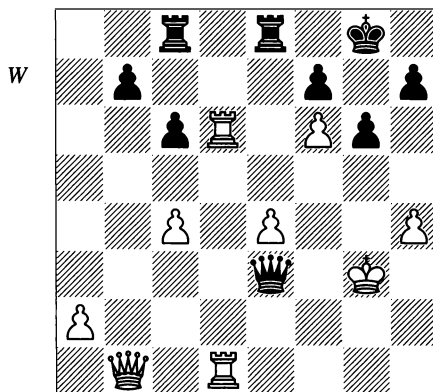
35 ♙xd6 ♙xd6 36 ♖xd6 ♘xg3 37 ♘c5 ♜e7! (D)



Things have turned upside-down very rapidly, as White's mistake was quite serious. Now

the white king also begins to suffer, as Black is preparing for the final attack.

38 f6 ♜e5! 39 ♙xc8 ♜xc5+ 40 ♖g2 ♖axc8 41 ♖xg3 ♜e3+ (D)



The game is practically over. White succeeded in winning the d6-pawn, but in exchange for his king!

42 ♖g2 ♖xe4 43 ♖d8+ ♖e8 44 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 45 ♜xb7 ♜e2+! 46 ♖g3 ♖e8! 47 ♜xc6 ♖e3+ 0-1

Opposite-Coloured Bishops

For many players, opposite-coloured bishops are linked with a peaceful outcome, even if there is a material advantage (1-2 pawns). This view, though not without merit where the theory of pure opposite-coloured bishop endgames is concerned, is quite unfair to the rich possibilities offered by opposite-coloured bishops.

In the middlegame, the presence of opposite-coloured bishops is often a signal for attack, as the more active bishop cannot be exchanged for its counterpart – they move on squares of opposite colours! Consequently, the attacking side employs one extra piece in the attack, something that can prove fatal for the opponent. The superior placement of one of these bishops (with regard to the pawn-structures) creates the preconditions for an attack and, in general, a strong initiative.

In the endgame, winning chances diminish as the number of theoretically drawn positions increases. But in the presence of other pieces, major ones in particular, the principle that 'opposite-coloured bishops favour the attacker' can be enough on its own to offer one side the upper hand. Nevertheless, it is a fact that opposite-coloured bishop endings are the refuge of all chess-players who have lost a pawn. It is also a fact that not all such endings are drawn but, like all strategic and tactical elements, the evaluation depends on the pawn-structures and in general on all the normal factors that determine the outcome of a game.

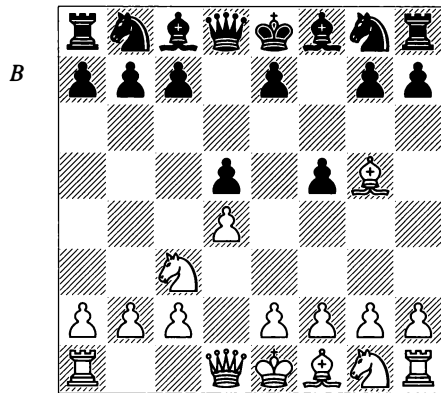
Vera – Grivas

Leningrad 1989

1 d4 f5 2 ♖c3 d5 3 ♙g5 (D)

Another interesting line is 3 ♙f4 a6! (3... ♖f6 4 e3 e6 5 ♖b5!, Grivas-Camilleri, Athens 1990) 4 e3 ♖f6 5 ♖f3 e6 6 ♙e2 (6 ♙d3 ♙d6 7 ♖e2 ♖c6 8 c3 ♖e4 9 ♖c2 0-0 10 h4 ♖e8 11 ♖e5 ♙d7 12 ♖xc6 ♙xc6 is unclear, Peev-Grivas,

Plovdiv 1988) 6... ♙d6 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♖c1 ♖c6 9 ♖b1 ♖e7 10 c4 ♖g6 with unclear play, Bou-sios-Grivas, Patra 1988.



3...c6

Black can also continue 3... ♖f6 4 ♙xf6 (4 e3 e6 5 h3 ♙e7 6 g4 0-0 7 ♖d2 ♖e4! is satisfactory for Black, Negulescu-Grivas, Varna 1994) 4...exf6 5 e3 ♙e6 6 ♙d3 (6 ♖ge2!? ♖d7 7 ♖d2 ♖c6 8 ♖f4 ♙f7 9 g3 ♖e7 10 ♙g2 c6 11 0-0 ♖c8 12 ♖a4 ♖d6 13 ♖c5 ♖c8 is unclear, Managadze-Grivas, Athens 1999) 6... ♖d7! 7 ♖ge2 (7 h4 ♖c6 8 ♖h3 ♙b4 9 ♖d2 h5 10 ♖f4 ♙f7 11 a3 ♙xc3 12 ♖xc3 ♖e7 13 ♖b3 1/2-1/2 Grivas-Dao Thien Hai, Budapest 1994) 7... ♖c6 8 a3 ♖e7 9 ♖f4 ♙f7 10 h4 ♖c8! 11 ♖f3 c6 12 ♖h3 ♖d6 with equal chances, Osmanbegović-Grivas, Cannes 1995.

4 e3 g6 5 h4 ♙g7 6 ♖f3

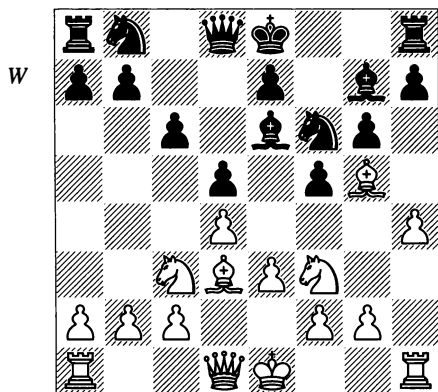
6 h5? is premature due to 6...h6! 7 ♙f4 g5.

6...♖f6 7 ♙d3

No more than equality is offered by 7 ♙f4 ♙e6 8 h5 ♖bd7! (8... ♖xh5?! 9 ♖xh5! gxh5 10 ♖g5 ♙g8 11 ♖xh5+ ♖f8 12 ♙d3 e6 13 g4 h6 14 ♖f3 ♙f7 15 ♖h3 with the initiative for White, Khalifman-Lerner, Kuibyshev 1987) 9 h6 ♙f8 10 ♖d2 ♙f7 11 ♖e5 e6!, Khalifman-Liogky, USSR Army Ch (Tashkent) 1987.

7...♙e6 (D)

Also interesting is 7...♘bd7!? 8 ♙f4 0-0 9 ♘e2 ♗b6 10 b3 a5 11 0-0 with unclear play, A.Mastrovasilis-Grivas, Ikaria 1997.

**8 ♘e2**

It is clear that the c3-knight was not participating in the game and so it seeks a better square, namely f4. White will aim for the h5 advance, but Black has a solid set-up and control over the e4-square. Thus, chances appear balanced in a position that, due to the rather fixed pawn-structure, will hardly 'change'.

8...♙f7 9 ♘f4 ♘bd7 10 h5 ♘e4! 11 hxg6 hxg6 12 ♙xh8+ ♙xh8 13 ♙e2 ♘g5

13...♘f8?! 14 ♗h1 ♙f6 15 ♙h6 ♘e6 16 g4! gave White the advantage in V.Kovačević-Kristiansen, Plovdiv Echt 1983, but Black can instead play 13...♙f6! 14 ♙xf6 exf6 15 ♗h1 g5! with an excellent position; e.g., 16 ♗h8+? ♙e7 17 ♗xd8+ ♙xd8 and White even loses; or 16 ♘h5 ♙g6! 17 ♙f1?! ♗e7 18 ♗h2 0-0-0 19 ♘g3 ♗g7 ♣.

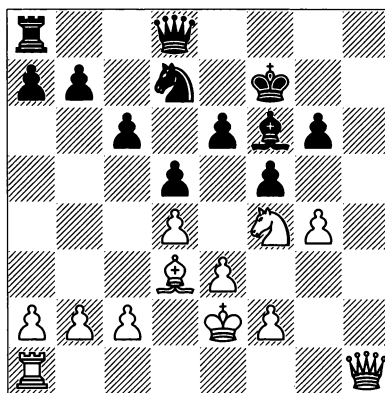
14 ♘g5 ♙f6 15 ♘xf7

15 ♘ge6? ♗b8 16 ♗h1 ♗d6! would have amounted to a serious mistake.

15...♙xf7 16 g4! e6 17 ♗h1 (D)

Both sides can feel satisfied with their position. The presence of opposite-coloured bishops and the pawn-structures will determine the further course of the game. White will try to develop some kind of attack against the black king by opening the g- and c-files (after the advance c4), as the h-file cannot be used by either side. Naturally, Black has every chance of a

B



successful defence, as his pieces occupy good positions; however, he must be very careful.

17...♗h8 18 ♗g2 ♗g7 19 ♙g1 ♙g8 20 c4! ♘b6! 21 cxd5?!

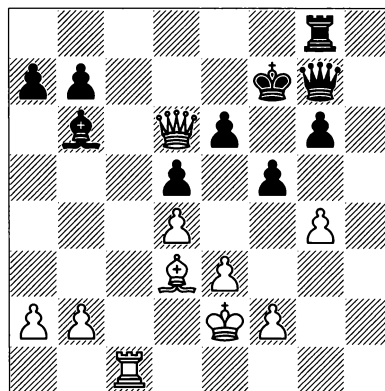
21 b3! leaves Black facing greater problems finding an active plan.

21...♘xd5!

The strong f4-knight must be exchanged, thus reducing White's overall pressure.

22 ♘xd5 cxd5 23 ♙c1 ♙d8! 24 ♗g3 ♙b6 25 ♗d6 (D)

B



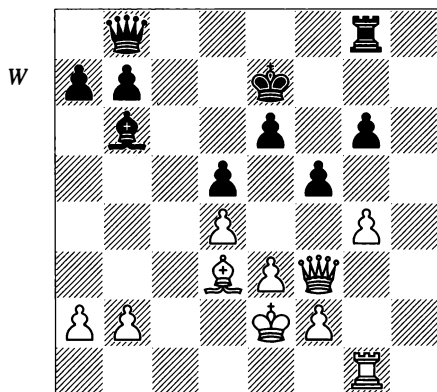
25...♗f8!

All would be lost after 25...♙d8?? 26 ♙c7+!. If Black manages to exchange queens, White's attack will be fended off and the game will quickly end in a draw.

26 ♗f4 ♗b8 27 ♗f3 ♙f6! 28 ♙g1 ♙e7?! (D)

Black is beginning to lose touch with the position. His plan should be to control the vital

h2-b8 diagonal and at the same time prevent the participation of the d3-bishop in the attack by ♖g2, ♔d1 and ♙e2. In view of this he had to proceed 28...♙c7! 29 ♖g2 ♙f7 30 ♔d1 ♖f8 31 ♙e2 ♖g7, with equal chances.



29 ♖g2 ♙f7 30 ♔d1 fxg4??

A totally incomprehensible move that allows the d3-bishop to display its power. 30...♖f8 31 ♙e2 ♖g7 was compulsory.

31 ♖xg4 ♖h2?

Although Black's position is now lost, it was at least essential to try to set up a defence with 31...♙e7. White's attack now breaks through.

32 ♖f3+! ♙e7 33 ♖h1! ♖b8 34 ♖h7+ ♔d6 35 ♙b5! 1-0

White's mating threats, 36 ♖d7# and 36 ♖f4+, cannot be countered.

Elsness – Grivas

Olympiad, Erevan 1996

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 a6 6 ♙g5 c6 7 ♖d2

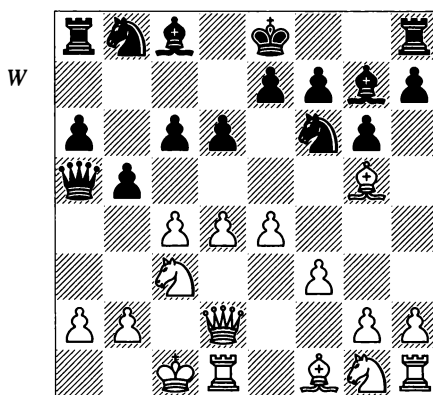
Other options for White are 7 a4 and 7 ♙d3.

7...b5 8 0-0-0

A different line (and with different ideas) is 8 ♖c1 ♘bd7 9 b3 0-0 10 ♘h3 bxc4 11 bxc4 e5 (11...c5 12 d5 ♖b8 13 ♘f2 ♖a5 14 ♙e2 ♘b6 15 0-0 ♙d7 is unclear, Vafiadis-Grivas, Agia Pelagia 2004) 12 d5 cxd5 13 cxd5 ♘c5 14 ♘f2 ♙d7 15 ♘fd1 ♖a5 16 ♘b2 ♙b5, with unclear play, Atalik-Grivas, Karditsa 1996.

8...♖a5 (D)

9 e5



W

More common is 9 ♔b1 ♘bd7 10 ♙h6 ♙xh6 11 ♖xh6 ♖b8 12 h4 with unclear play, C.Ionescu-Grivas, Kavala (Balkaniad) 1990.

9...b4! 10 ♘b1?

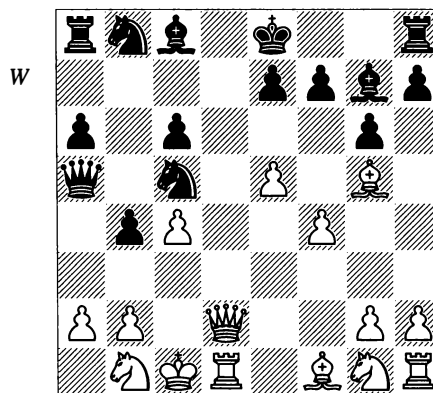
White should prefer 10 exf6 bxc3 11 fxg7 (11 ♖e3!? cxb2+ 12 ♘xb2 ♙f8 13 fxe7 ♙g7 is unclear) 11...cxd2+ 12 ♙xd2 ♖xd2+ 13 ♖xd2 ♙g8 with equality.

10...dxe5 11 dxe5 ♘fd7 12 f4

After 12 e6 ♘c5! 13 exf7+ ♘xf7 14 b3 ♙f5 Black's attack assumes decisive proportions.

12...♘c5! (D)

12...h6 13 ♙h4 g5 14 fxg5 ♘xe5 15 ♘f3 is rather unclear.



W

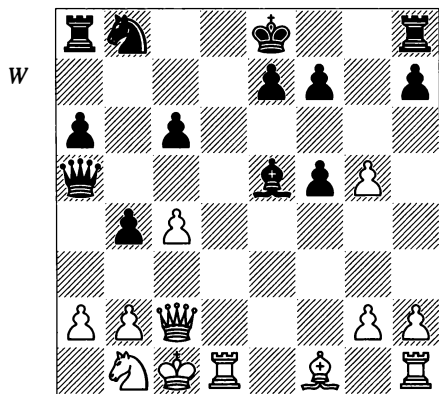
13 ♘f3 ♙f5 14 ♘d4! ♘e4!

14...♖xa2? is significantly inferior, as after 15 ♖xb4! a5 (15...♖xb1+ 16 ♔d2 ♘e4+? 17 ♙e1 c5 18 ♖b7!) 16 ♖a3, both sides have chances in a complex position. Black must be on the alert.

15 ♖xf5! gxf5!

Black avoids the unnecessary complications arising from 15...♖xd2?! 16 ♖xg7+ ♕f8 (16...♕d8? 17 ♜xd2+ ♖c8 18 ♕xe7) 17 ♖h6.

16 ♜c2 ♖xg5 17 fxg5 ♕xe5 (D)



Black's material gain is not important. His superiority is derived from the presence of opposite-coloured bishops, which grant him good attacking prospects. The white king is weak and all Black has to do is complete his development and mobilize all his forces.

18 ♕d3 e6 19 ♜hf1 ♜xa2! 20 ♕xf5! ♖d7!

20...exf5? is totally misguided: 21 ♜fe1 ♖d7 22 ♜xd7 ♕xd7 23 ♜xf5+!. Black must develop his pieces and attack, not defend.

21 ♕e4 ♖c5! 22 ♕xc6+ ♖e7

Now White is unable to defend adequately, as the menacing e5-bishop, in conjunction with the weaknesses around White's king, determines the outcome of the game.

23 ♜f3 ♜ad8 24 ♜df1 ♜hf8

The direct 24...♕f4+! 25 ♕xf4 ♖b3+ would also win.

25 b3

Black wins after 25 g3 ♜d6! as well.

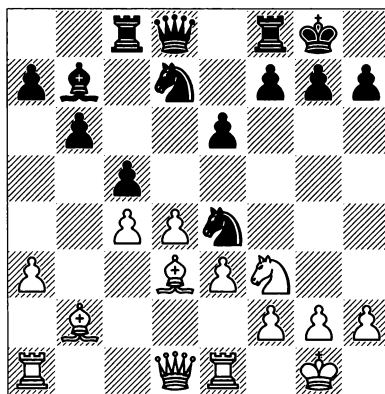
25...♕f4+! 0-1

Taimanov – Averbakh

Candidates, Zurich 1953

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 ♕b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♕d3 d5 6 ♖f3 b6 7 0-0 ♕b7 8 a3 ♕xc3 9 bxc3 dxc4 10 ♕xc4 c5 11 ♕d3 ♖bd7 12 ♖e1 ♖e4 13 ♕b2 ♖c8 14 c4 (D)

B



14...♖df6?!

Black should have set up his defence more carefully. The moves ...♜c7, ...♜a8, ...♜fc8 and ...♖f8 would have given him a solid position with few dangers lying ahead.

15 ♖e5 ♜c7 16 a4! ♖d6 17 a5 ♖d7 18 axb6 axb6 19 ♜h5! g6

Black finds it difficult to organize a successful defence, as neither 19...h6 20 ♖g4! (threatening 21 ♖xh6+!), 19...♖f6 20 ♜h3 (with ideas such as 21 ♖g4 and 21 d5) nor 19...♕e4 20 ♜ed1! is pleasant.

20 ♜h6 ♖xe5 21 dxe5 ♖e4 22 ♕xe4!

A tough decision, but fully justified. The resulting opposite-coloured bishop situation facilitates White's attacking possibilities, as Black is lacking an important defensive piece; moreover, White can now successfully contest the d-file by placing a rook on d6.

22...♕xe4 23 ♜ed1 ♖d7 24 ♜d6! ♕b7

After 24...♜xd6? 25 exd6 f6 26 ♜a7 White will win.

25 ♜ad1?

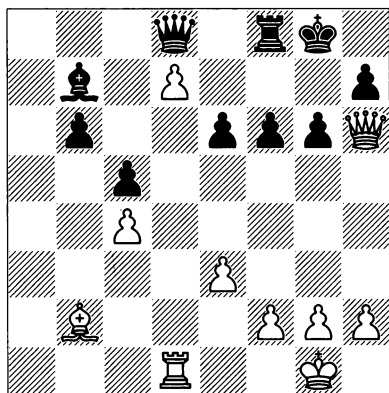
A waste of time. The immediate 25 h4 or 25 e4 is better.

25...♕xd6 26 exd6 f6 27 d7 (D)

27...♕c6!?

Black could not play 27...♜f7 28 ♜h3! f5 29 ♜h6 ♜xd7? 30 ♜g7+!., while he also had to cater for the threatened 28 ♜xf8+! ♕xf8 29 ♕xf6. His best option was probably 27...e5!? 28 f4 (28 h4 ♜f7 29 h5 ♜xd7 30 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 31 hxg6 hxg6 32 ♜xg6+ ♜g7 or 28 ♜h3 ♜e7! intending ...♜d8 and ...♕c6) 28...♜f7 29 ♜h3 (29 fxe5 ♜xd7 30 ♖f1 ♜d1!) 29...♕c6 30 ♜e6! (30

B



fxe5 ♖xd7!) 30...♙xd7 31 ♔d6, when White's pressure persists but Black's practical defensive chances are fair enough.

28 h4! ♙xd7 29 h5 gxh5?

Black has captured the dangerous white d-pawn but failed to show his class at the critical moment. The simple 29...g5! 30 ♙xf6 ♜xf6! (30...♜xf6? 31 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 32 ♙xd7) 31 ♜xg5+ ♗f7 32 h6 ♗e7! (32...e5? 33 ♙d6; 32...♜e7? 33 ♙xd7!) would have led to a draw.

30 e4!

Paving the way for the rook (♙d3-g3+).

30...e5 31 f4!

At the present moment pawns are less important than the opening of lines so as to make use of the b2-bishop. In sharp contrast, the miserable d7-bishop is unable to contribute to Black's cause.

31...exf4

31...♜c7 32 fxe5 fxe5 33 ♜g5+ is also winning for White, as Black cannot put up a defence any more. The concluding attack highlights the difference in strength between the opposite-coloured bishops in this type of position.

32 ♙d6 ♜e8 33 ♙xf6 ♜f7 34 ♙d5 1-0

Kalesis – Grivas

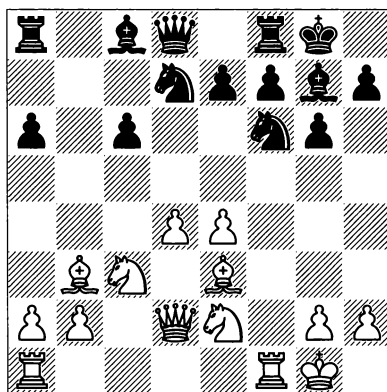
Athens 1991

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 c6 6 ♙e3 a6 7 ♙d3 b5 8 ♘ge2 0-0 9 0-0 ♙bd7 10 ♙d2 bxc4 11 ♙xc4 d5 12 ♙b3 dxe4 13 fxe4? (D)

A novelty of dubious merit. 13 ♘xe4 is both correct and practically forced, as now Black

can seize the advantage with a series of accurate moves.

B



13...♘g4! 14 ♙g5

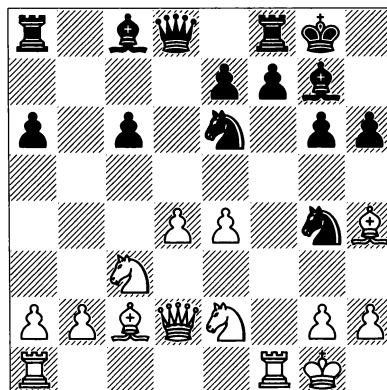
Allowing the exchange of the dark-squared bishop (14 ♙ad1 ♘xe3 15 ♜xe3) was indicated, but naturally undesirable. 14 ♙f4? is much worse due to 14...e5! 15 ♙g5 ♜c7.

14...h6! 15 ♙h4 ♘c5! 16 ♙c2

White's alternatives are unsatisfactory: 16 ♙c4 ♙e6! or 16 ♙xf7+? ♜xf7 17 ♜xf7 ♗xf7 18 ♜f4+ ♗g8 19 dxc5 g5!.

16...♘e6 (D)

W



17 ♙ad1

Forced. 17 h3? fails to 17...♘xd4!.

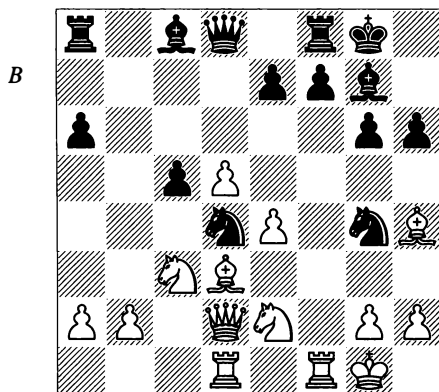
17...c5! 18 d5

Black was better after 18 dxc5 ♜c7! 19 ♙g3 ♜xc5+ 20 ♙f2 (20 ♗h1? ♘e3!) 20...♘xf2 21 ♜xf2 ♙d8 22 ♘d5 ♙xb2 23 ♜xh6 ♙b7 in Tsai-Browne, USA Ch (Seattle) 2002. 18 h3?!

cx d4 19 h x g4 d x c3 20 ♖ x d8 ♜ x d8 21 b x c3 g5 looks even worse.

18...♟ d4 19 ♙ d3?! (D)

White should have opted for 19 ♙ b1 ♟ e5 20 b3 ♙ g4 ♞. Now his position becomes critical.



19...♟ x e2+! 20 ♟ x e2

Not, of course, 20 ♙ x e2 ♙ d4+!.

20...c4! 21 ♙ b1

21 ♙ x c4?? ♜ c7! would be a tragic blunder.

21...♜ b6+ 22 ♟ d4 e5! 23 d x e6 ♙ x e6 24 h3 g5?

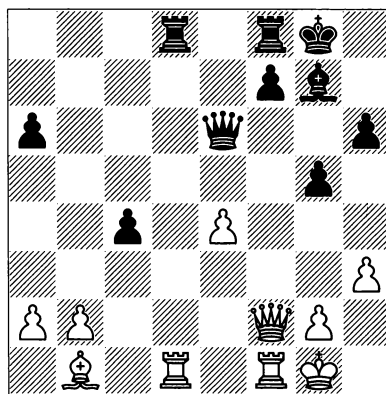
Although Black retains the advantage with this move, the tactical sequence 24...♜ a8!! 25 ♙ x d8 ♜ x d8 26 h x g4 ♙ x g4!! 27 ♜ f4 ♙ x d1 28 ♜ x f7+ ♙ h8 (or 28...♙ h7 29 ♜ x d1 ♜ x d4 30 ♜ x d4 ♜ x d4+ 31 ♙ h2 ♜ x b2 32 e5 ♜ x b1 33 e6 ♜ b8+ 34 g3 c3 and Black wins) 29 ♜ x d1 ♜ x d4 30 ♜ x d4 ♜ x d4+ 31 ♙ h2 ♜ x b2 would decide the game at once.

25 ♙ f2! ♟ x f2 26 ♜ x f2 ♜ a d8 27 ♟ x e6 ♜ x e6! (D)

Only equality is offered by 27...♜ x f2+? 28 ♙ x f2 f x e6+ 29 ♙ e2 ♙ x b2 30 ♜ x f8+ ♜ x f8 31 ♜ d6.

With the text-move Black correctly keeps the queens on the board, expecting that he can exploit the weak dark squares around White's king. There is material equality on the board, but Black's advantage is great in view of the qualitative difference between the opposite-coloured bishops. Black's dark-squared bishop controls a lot of squares and can exercise its power on both flanks in cooperation with Black's major pieces; it can attack the white

W



king or the b-pawn. On the other hand, White's light-squared bishop does not really contribute to either defensive or attacking efforts.

28 ♙ h1 ♙ e5! 29 ♜ c2 ♜ x d1! 30 ♜ x d1

After 30 ♜ x d1 g4! Black's attack is very strong.

30...♜ b8! 31 b3 c x b3 32 a x b3 ♜ x b3

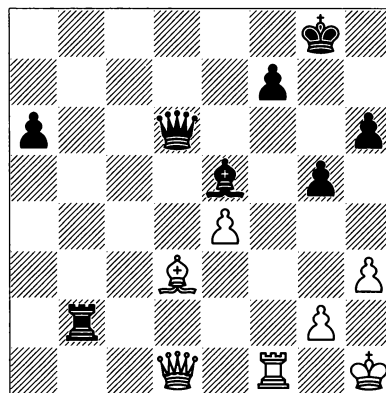
The position has clarified in Black's favour, as he has retained his positional advantage while also having won a pawn. The immediate threat is 33...♜ x h3+!.

33 ♜ f5 ♜ b2

33...♜ a3! followed by ...♜ a1 is even better.

34 ♙ d3 ♜ d6 35 ♜ f1 (D)

B



35...♜ e6?

Time-pressure has ruined many games, but one has to accept that it is part of the chess battle. 35...a5 would have been the normal continuation of the play.

36 ♜ a4!

Threatening 37 ♖xa6 or 37 ♖c4.

36...♙d6! 37 ♖c4!

37 ♙c4 ♖e5! would have been a costly mistake!

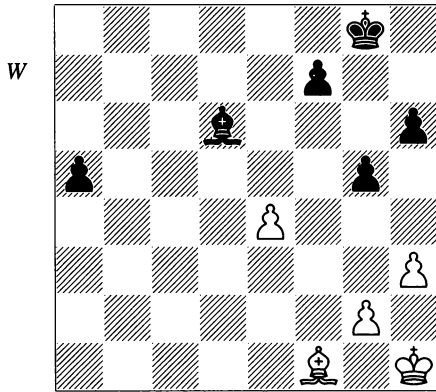
37...♜b6 38 ♜f5?

White returns the favour! He could achieve the desired draw by playing 38 ♖xe6 fxe6 39 ♜a1.

38...♜b1+! 39 ♜f1 ♖xc4?

After the exchange of queens the white king is relieved. Black would win fairly easily after the natural 39...♙xf1+ 40 ♙xf1 ♖e5 41 ♙g1 a5 by combining an attack on the king and the advance of the passed a-pawn.

40 ♙xc4 ♜xf1+ 41 ♙xf1 a5 (D)



The endgame that has arisen is objectively drawn. Black will try to penetrate with his king on one of the flanks, aiming either to win one more pawn or to advance the a-pawn to good effect. If White succeeds in blockading Black's passed a-pawn with his king and at the same time placing his bishop on f3, then he will achieve the draw, as Black will be unable to make progress.

42 ♙b5?

Automatic and mistaken. After the correct 42 ♙c4! White would have the time necessary to adopt the aforementioned set-up.

42...♙g7! 43 ♙g1 ♙f6 44 ♙f2 ♙e5 45 ♙e3 ♙c5+ 46 ♙d3

Compulsory, as after 46 ♙f3 ♙d4 the black king's invasion would prove decisive.

46...♙f4 47 ♙c6 ♙d6 48 ♙e2 ♙c5 49 ♙d3 ♙b6?

The correct 49...f6! 50 ♙e2 ♙b6 would bring White into zugzwang.

50 ♙e8 f6?

A second – and now decisive – error by Black. 50...♙g3 51 ♙xf7 ♙xg2 would enable him to obtain two widely-separated passed pawns and win the game, as the white e-pawn does not play any significant part in the game.

51 ♙h5! a4 52 ♙f3 a3 53 ♙c3 ♙c5 1/2-1/2

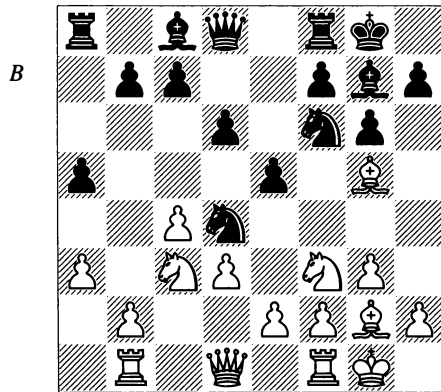
White has achieved the desired set-up and thus Black can make no progress. An undeserved end to a very interesting game.

Velikov – Grivas

Khania 1992

1 ♖f3 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0 5 0-0 d6 6 ♖c3 e5 7 d3 ♖c6 8 ♜b1 a5 9 a3 ♖d4 10 ♙g5 (D)

For 10 b4 see the game Dedes-Grivas, Iraklion 1992, analysed in Volume 2 of this series.



10...h6

Black can also play 10...♖e6 11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 12 b4 axb4 13 axb4 ♙g7 14 b5 ♙d7 (14...f5!? 15 ♖d5 ♙h8 16 ♖d2 ♜a2 17 ♖b3 h5 is unclear, C.Foisor-Brustman, Erevan wom OL 1996) 15 ♜a1 c6 16 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 17 ♖b3 ♖a5 18 ♜b1 ♖c5 with chances for both sides, Adianto-M.Pavlović, Biel 1998.

11 ♙xf6 ♖xf6 12 b4 axb4 13 axb4 c6 14 b5 ♜a3? 15 bxc6 bxc6 16 ♖xd4 exd4 17 ♖a4!

Clearly better than 17 ♖e4 ♖e7 18 ♜b6 d5 19 ♖d2 ♙g4 20 ♜e1 ♖c5 with unclear play, Bareev-Beliavsky, Ubeda 1997.

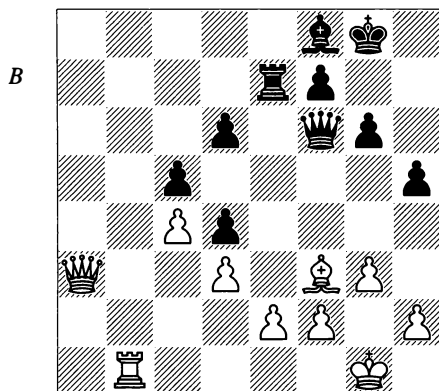
17...c5

Almost forced, as 17...♙d7 18 ♖b6 ♙e8 19 ♖a1! promises White a clear advantage.

18 ♖b6 ♙e6 19 ♖d5 ♙xd5?

The d5-knight is menacingly placed but Black should delay its exchange as much as possible. 19...♗d8 was compulsory.

20 ♙xd5 ♖e8 21 ♖b7 ♖e7 22 ♗b1 ♙f8 23 ♗b2 ♖xb7 24 ♗xa3 ♖e7 25 ♙f3 h5 26 ♖b1 (D)



White has a stable advantage as transformations of the pawn-structure are highly unlikely. This advantage is owed to his superior bishop that controls vital squares, particularly the sensitive a2-g8 diagonal (from d5). Black's main problem is to find an active plan and improve the f8-bishop, which lacks targets. It must be noted that the presence of major pieces is particularly important; were we to remove them from the board, the position would be drawn. Thus, this exchange of the major pieces must be Black's plan, even if he has to offer material (a pawn) to achieve it.

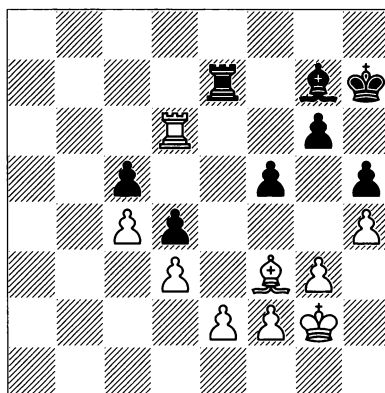
26...♗e5 27 ♗a4 ♙g7 28 ♗a8+ ♖e8 29 ♗c6 ♖e6 30 h4 ♙h7 31 ♙g2 ♖e7 32 ♖a1 ♖e6 33 ♖a8 ♖f6 34 ♙e4 ♖e6 35 ♗d7 ♖e7 36 ♗d8 f5

Black has been forced to weaken his king with his last move. The lack of counterplay suits White who, with slow, 'mostly pointless' manoeuvres, gradually but steadily improves his position.

37 ♙f3 ♗f6 38 ♖a6 ♖e6 39 ♗d7 ♖e7 40 ♗xd6 ♗xd6 41 ♗xd6 (D)

White has won a pawn while keeping the rooks on the board. His position is won, unless

B



Black succeeds in exchanging these rooks under favourable circumstances.

41...♙f8 42 ♖c6 ♖e5 43 ♙d5 ♙g7 44 ♙f3 ♖e7?

This eases White's task as it allows the exchange of the important black c5-pawn for the weak white one on e2. As a consequence, White also obtains a passed pawn; this proves decisive. The end of the game is instructive for the slow but sure way in which White secured the point:

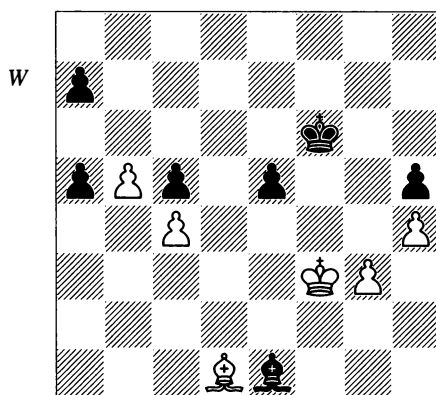
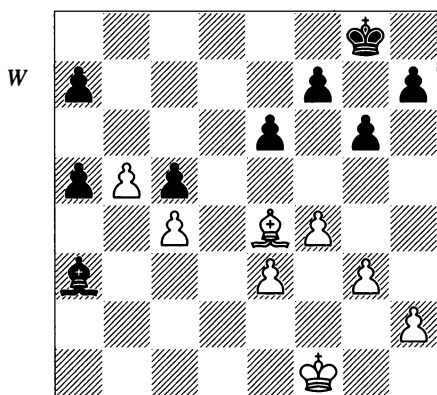
45 ♖xc5 ♖xe2 46 ♖c7+ ♖e7 47 ♖c8 ♖e1 48 ♙b7 ♖e5 49 ♖d8 ♙c5 50 ♙d5 ♙f6 51 ♖c8 ♙a3 52 ♖a8 ♙b4 53 ♖a4 ♙c5 54 ♖a6+ ♙g7 55 ♖a5 ♙b4 56 ♖b5 ♙a3 57 ♖b3 ♙e7 58 ♖b7 ♙f6 59 ♖d7 ♖e1 60 ♙b7 ♙c5 61 ♖c7 ♙f8 62 c5 ♖c1 63 c6 ♙d6 64 ♖c8 ♖c2 65 ♙a6 ♖c5 66 ♙c4 g5 67 hxg5+ ♙xg5 68 ♙b3 ♙f6 69 ♙a4 ♖a5 70 ♖d8 ♙e5 71 ♙b3 ♙c5 72 ♙d5 ♙g5 73 ♙g2 f4 74 gxf4+ ♙xf4 75 ♙e4 ♙g5 76 ♖f8 ♙f4 77 ♙h3 ♙d6 78 ♖f7 ♙f4 79 ♖e7 ♙d6 80 ♖e6 ♙b8 81 ♖g6+ ♙f4 1-0

Shirov – Andersson

Biel 1991

1 ♖f3 c5 2 g3 g6 3 ♙g2 ♙g7 4 0-0 ♖f6 5 d3 ♖c6 6 a3 0-0 7 c3 b6 8 b4 ♙b7 9 ♙b2 ♗c7 10 ♖bd2 d5 11 b5 ♖a5 12 c4 dxc4 13 ♙e5 ♗d7 14 dxc4 ♖ad8 15 ♙c3 ♖e4 16 ♙xa5 bxa5 17 ♖xe4 ♙xe4 18 ♗xd7 ♖xd7 19 ♖ad1 ♖fd8 20 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 21 ♖e5 ♙xe5 22 ♙xe4 ♖d2 23 e3 e6 24 f4 ♙b2 25 ♖f2 ♖d1+ 26 ♖f1 ♖xf1+ 27 ♙xf1 ♙xa3 (D)

White has managed to reduce Black's advantage by simplifying into an opposite-coloured



bishop ending a pawn down, where he can retain the balance as the black king cannot penetrate White's lines of defence.

28 ♖e2 ♙c1 29 ♙c2 f5 30 ♖f3 ♖f7 31 e4 fxe4+

Compulsory, as 31...♔e7 32 e5 would forever renounce the black king's opportunities to enter White's part of the board.

32 ♖xe4 ♖f6 33 ♙d1 ♙b2 34 ♙c2 ♙d4 35 ♖f3 h6 36 ♙d1 g5 37 h3 ♙c3 38 fxe5+?

A decisive mistake. By using waiting tactics (38 ♙c2) White would, although not without effort, hold the draw. Black could try 38...gxf4 39 gxf4 (39 ♖xf4? leads to positions similar to the game) 39...♙d2, trying to penetrate on one flank or the other with the help of the ...e5 advance.

38...♖xg5 39 ♖e4 ♖f6 40 h4 ♙e1 41 ♖f4 e5+ 42 ♖f3 h5! (D)

43 g4

White decides to alter the pawn-structure, as 43 ♙c2 e4+!! leaves him with the following undesirable options:

a) 44 ♙xe4 ♖e5! 45 ♖e3 a4! and Black wins (45...♙c3? 46 ♙g6 a4 47 ♖d3 with a draw).

b) 44 ♖f4 e3 45 ♙d1 ♙f2 and I don't see how White can defend.

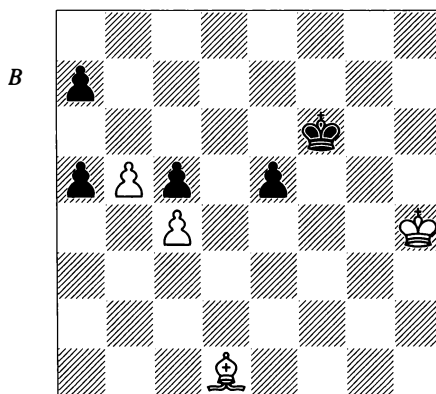
c) 44 ♖xe4 ♙xg3 45 ♙d1 ♖g6! and Black will obtain a second passed pawn.

43...hxg4+ 44 ♖xg4 ♙xh4!!

The hidden possibility that White overlooked. Even if the sacrifice is declined, White will be unable to prevent an eventual invasion by the black king.

45 ♖xh4 (D)

A possible line of play is 45 ♙c2 ♙e1 46 ♙d1 ♙d2 47 ♖f3 ♖g5 48 ♙c2 ♙c3 49 ♖g3 ♙d4 50 ♖f3 ♖h4 51 ♙d1 ♖h3 52 ♙c2 ♖h2 53 ♙d1 ♖g1 54 ♖e2 ♖g2 55 ♙c2 ♖g3 56 ♙d1 e4.



45...♖f5 46 ♖g3 ♖e4 47 ♖f2 ♖d3 48 ♖e1 ♖xc4 49 ♖d2 ♖b4!

The black pawns prove stronger than the white bishop.

50 ♖c2 e4 51 ♙g4 a4 52 ♙f5 e3 53 ♙e6 c4 0-1

Small Advantages

We often encounter positions where one side has an infinitesimal or practically invisible advantage. There are numerous annotated games in which we read about a small positional advantage that is in itself insufficient for victory, or about the active moves of the opponent that neutralized it.

The truth lies somewhere in between. A 'negligible' advantage can, through a series of active moves, be converted into victory, but only if the defending side fails to make full use of its defensive potential. Overall, the positional advantage is a very broad concept.

We could attempt to draw up some rules regarding the obligations of the side that wishes to increase its infinitesimal advantage.

1) Creation of new weaknesses in the opponent's camp, along with (if possible) threats against his king.

2) Transformation of the positional advantage into material plus.

3) Transition to a won ending.

In most cases this process requires sensitive, initially 'incomprehensible' manoeuvres in tune with a concrete strategy, that must be carefully designed and carried out. However, the most significant factors are effort, faith and dedication to the goal of victory, without burning bridges. A small advantage does not guarantee victory but affords us priority in seeking it. It is up to us to make full use of it.

Grivas – I. Nikolaidis

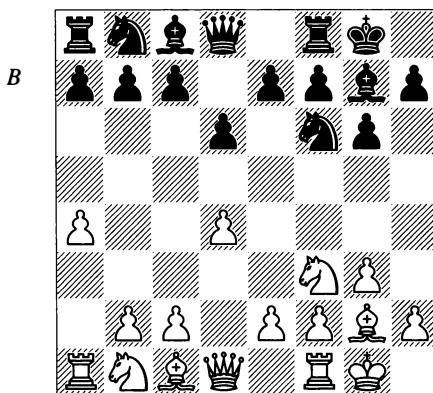
Volos 1996

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0 5 0-0 d6 6 a4!? (D)

An interesting line, in place of the common and theoretical 6 c4.

6...♘a6

Black has several alternatives at his disposal:



a) 6...♘bd7 7 a5 a6 8 ♘c3 c5 9 d5 b5 10 axb6 ♘xb6 11 e4 ♙d7 12 h3 ♘e8 13 ♙e1 ♘c7 14 e5 ♘b5 15 ♘e4 ♙c8 16 e6 fxe6 17 dxe6 ♙xe6 18 ♘eg5 ♙d5 19 ♙xe7 ♙f5 20 ♙e2 h6?? 21 ♘h4 1-0 Grivas-K.Hasan, Erevan OL 1996.

b) 6...♘c6 7 a5 a6 8 d5 ♘b8 9 c4 e6 10 ♘c3 ♙e8 11 ♘d4 e5 12 ♘c2 e4 13 ♘e3 with advantage for White, Grivas-Iordachescu, Erevan OL 1996.

c) 6...c6 7 a5 ♘a6 8 ♘c3 d5 9 ♙f4 ♙f5 10 ♙e5 ♙d7 11 ♘a4 ♙h6 12 ♙xf6 exf6 13 e3 ± Grivas-Delchev, Athens 1996.

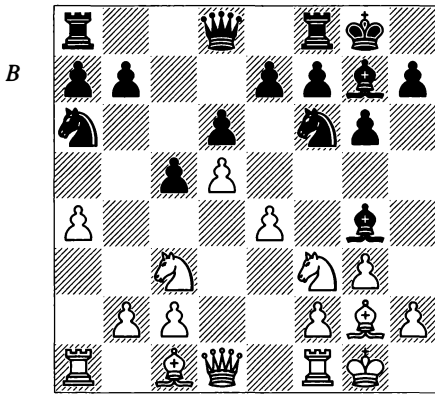
d) 6...c5 7 dxc5 dxc5 8 ♘c3 ♘c6 9 ♙e3 ♙a5 10 ♙c1 ♙f5 11 ♙h6 ♘d4 12 ♙xg7 ♙xg7 13 ♘xd4 cxd4 14 ♘b5 is unclear, Grivas-Cela, Ikarria 1997.

e) 6...a5 7 ♘c3 d5 8 ♘e5 ♙f5 (8...c6 9 e4 dxe4 10 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 11 ♙xe4 ♙h3 12 ♙e1 ♘d7 13 ♘xd7 ♙xd7 14 ♙e3 ♙ad8 15 c3 ± Grivas-Vouldis, Athens 1996) 9 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 10 e4 ♙e6 11 exd5 ♙xd5 12 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 13 ♙f3 = Grivas-Banikas, Thessaloniki 2001.

7 ♘c3 c5 8 e4

8 d5?! is inferior due to 8...e6! 9 e4 exd5 10 exd5 ♘b4! threatening ...♙f5. Grivas-Kotronias, Volos 1996 featured 8 h3 ♙d7 9 e4 cxd4 10 ♘xd4 ±.

8...♙g4 9 d5 (D)



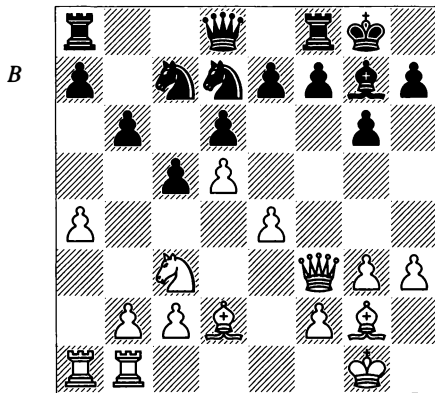
9...dxc7

After 9...dxc7 10 e1!, intending e4 and e5, White has an edge.

10 h3 e3 11 xf3 d7

11...a6 12 e2 d7 13 a5 b5 14 axb6 dxb6 15 d1 a5 16 h4 d7 17 c4 was interesting in Grivas-Pavlović, Athens 1996.

12 d2 b6 13 f1! (D)



The start of an original plan, its aim being to assume the initiative on the queenside, a flank that traditionally is Black's territory in such positions.

13...e6!?

The opening of the position favours White, who possesses the two bishops. Preferable was 13...a6 14 b4! or even 13...b8!?

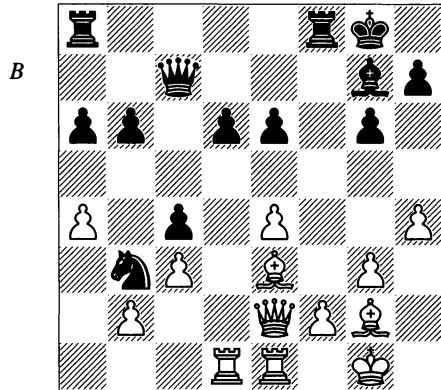
14 dxe6! fxe6

After 14...dxe6? 15 d5 White is much better.

15 e2 d5

With the idea ...dxc6-d4 and ...d5, with unclear play.

16 b5! a6! 17 dxc7 xc7 18 e3 dxc6 19 c3 a5 20 e1! b3 21 ad1 c4 22 h4! (D)



White's superiority is significant, as Black's position contains several weaknesses (d6, e6 and soon g6 as well).

22...b5 23 h5 ad8 24 axb5 axb5 25 hxg6 hxg6 26 g4 f7 27 g5?

White's advantage could have been retained by 27 f4! (27...b4? 28 e2!).

27...b4! 28 b5 bxc3 29 xc4 d2?

A serious mistake. After 29...a5 30 b5 d7 31 bxc3 xc3 32 e2 White's advantage is minimal.

30 d3 f3+ 31 xf3 xf3 32 bxc3

White's position is now winning, as he has an extra pawn while Black has not managed to rid himself of his weaknesses.

32...d5! 33 b6?

Returning the favour! 33 e5! f5 34 d4 would retain White's plus.

33...b8 34 c5 xc3! 35 e2! dxe4 36 xe4 f5 37 xf3 xf3 38 xe6 f6?!

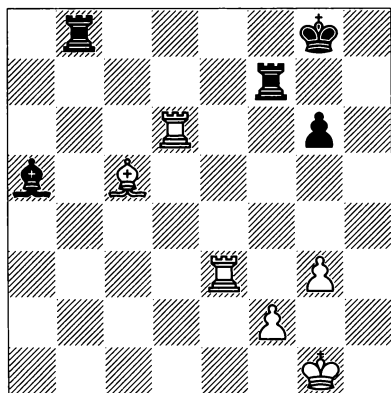
38...g7 is better.

39 e3! a5 40 d7 f7 41 d6 (D)

Despite the reduced material, White's superiority is small (but permanent) and is owed to the following factors:

- 1) Material advantage of one pawn (but with all the pawns on the same side).
- 2) Weak black pawn on g6.
- 3) Weakened black king.

B



4) Sideline and misplaced piece (the a5-bishop).

White must combine all the aforementioned small advantages in order to achieve the desired victory.

41...♖h7 42 ♜e6

42 g4! seems even better, with threats like ♖d4 and ♜h3+.

42...♜g8 43 ♖d4 ♖c7 44 ♜c6 ♜d7 45 ♖c3

Any piece exchange favours the defending side, as it helps limit the options available to the attacker. There are, of course, exceptions justified by specific considerations.

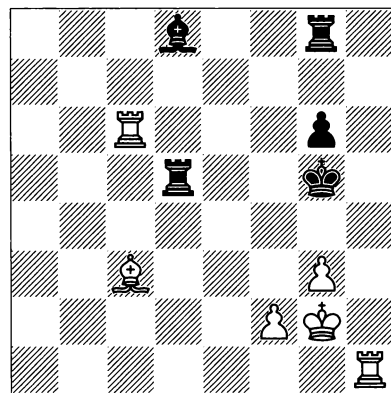
45...♖d8 46 ♖g2!

Intending ♜e1-h1+.

46...♖h6! 47 ♜e1 ♜d5 48 ♜h1+ ♖g5 (D)

Worse was 48...♜h5 49 ♜d1!.

W



49 ♖b2!

Black has no useful moves and must constantly monitor White's threats. Meanwhile,

White has now added the threat of ♖c1+ to his armoury.

49...♖f5 50 ♜h7 ♖e4 51 ♜f7 g5 52 ♜c3!

White threatens 53 ♜e3#.

52...♜a5 53 ♜c8! ♜a2

No relief is offered by 53...♜d5 54 ♖f6 ♜d6 55 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 56 ♜xd8 ♖xd8 57 ♖h3, when White will win the ending.

54 ♖c1 g4 55 ♖e3!

The careless 55 ♜d7?? ♜xf2+! would spoil all of White's efforts. Now, however, the win is simple.

55...♜e8 56 ♜d7 ♖f5 57 ♖d4 1-0

Karpov – Seirawan

World Cup, Skellefteå 1989

1 d4 d5 2 c4 dxc4 3 e4 e5 4 ♘f3 ♖b4+ 5 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 6 ♜xd2

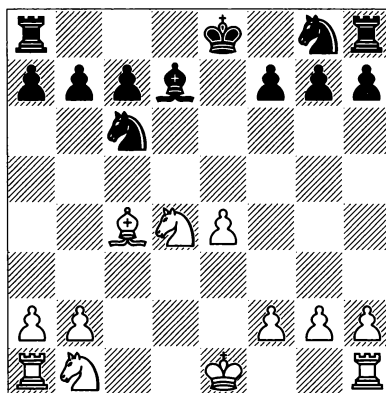
6 ♘bd2 exd4 7 ♖xc4 leads to more complicated positions.

6...exd4 7 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 8 ♘xd4 ♖d7

Black wishes to be rid of the dangerous d4-knight and thus prepares 9...♘c6. 8...a6 is inferior because after 9 ♖xc4 ♘f6 10 f3 b5 11 ♖e2 there are weaknesses on the squares a5 and c5, as well as the threat of 12 a4.

9 ♖xc4 ♘c6 (D)

W



10 ♘xc6

White seemingly eases Black's task with this exchange, but the black bishop will not prove well placed on c6. Besides, there was no choice as 10 ♘b5 0-0-0 (10...♘e5!? 11 ♘xc7+ ♖d8 12 ♘xa8 ♘xc4 is unclear) 11 ♖xf7 ♘e5 12

♙xg8 ♜xb5 allows Black to develop some activity.

10...♙xc6 11 ♖c3 ♜d8 12 ♜e2 ♜f6 13 f3

White is slightly better, as he possesses an extra pawn in the centre (better central control), which significantly restricts the black pieces.

13...♜e7 14 ♜hd1 a5?!

This move weakens Black's position without gaining anything in return. We must always keep in mind that pawns don't move backwards and thus every pawn move must be carefully considered.

15 ♜ac1

White could have won a tempo with the immediate 15 ♜e3.

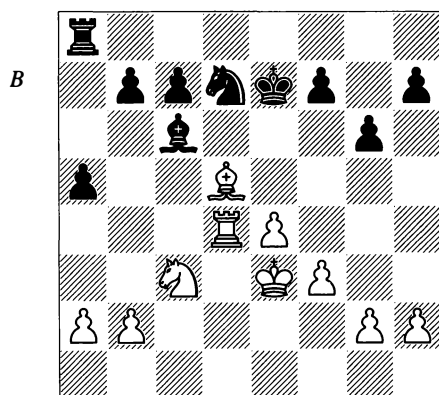
15...♜xd1 16 ♜xd1 ♜b8 17 ♜e3 g6!

17...b5?! 18 ♙f1, intending ♜e2-d4 and ♜c1, would present White with more queenside weaknesses to target.

18 ♙b3 ♜a8 19 ♜d4

Black's greatest problem is his inability to coordinate and activate his pieces; thus, they are doomed to permanent defence. On the other hand, White centralizes his own troops and prepares to develop play on the kingside, assisted by his pawn-majority (4:3) on that side of the board.

19...♜d7 20 ♙d5! (D)



Naturally, the white bishop is a better piece than its black counterpart, but this specific exchange offer contains certain tactical nuances. As Black is unable to continue with 20...♙xd5? 21 ♜xd5+ ♜d8 22 ♜f6, he is compelled either to allow the doubling of his pawns on the c-file

or to misplace his rook. It must be noted that 20...♜e5 21 h3! g5 22 g3 intending 23 f4 would also not help Black.

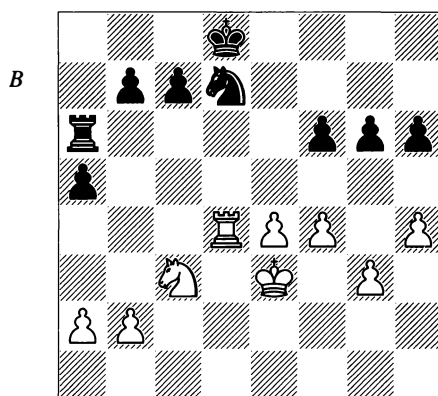
20...♜a6 21 f4 f6 22 h4 h6

Black is ready to meet the advance 23 g4 with 23...g5!, but he has also created additional weaknesses on his kingside.

23 g3! ♙xd5

Black has no more useful moves: 23...♜c5 24 ♜c4!; 23...♜f8 24 ♙c4! ♜a8 (24...♜b6 25 b3) 25 h5! gxf5 26 ♜d5+ ♙xd5 27 ♜xd5, with advantage for White.

24 ♜xd5+ ♜d8 25 ♜c3! (D)



White will now exploit the bad placement of the black rook, while also trying for the h5 advance. Despite appearances, Black's position is very difficult.

25...♜b6 26 ♜d2! c6 27 h5! g5

Compulsory. 27...gxf5 28 b3! and 29 ♜h2 is even worse for Black.

28 ♜f3 ♜e7 29 ♜e2!

Accurate, as 29 ♜d1 gxf4 30 gxf4 ♜b5 would trouble White. The white knight is aimed at the excellent, powerful f5-square.

29...c5

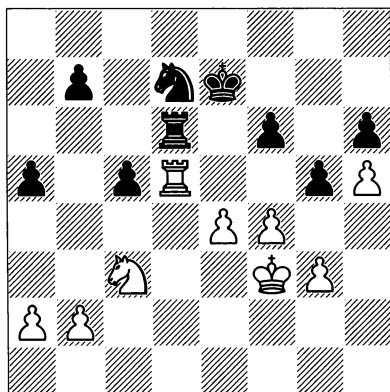
No better is 29...gxf4 30 gxf4 ♜b5 31 ♜g3! (the idea of 29 ♜e2!). Black tries to set his queenside majority in motion, but he only succeeds in creating further targets for his opponent.

30 ♜c3!

Every move by the black pawns creates new weaknesses and the white pieces seem always to be well placed to exploit them.

30...♖d6 31 ♖d5! (D)

B



White does not hesitate to exchange rooks as well, evaluating the resulting knight endgame as won.

31...♖xd5

31...♗e6 32 ♗g4! ♖xd5 33 exd5+ ♗f7 34 ♗e4 is also losing for Black.

32 ♗xd5+ ♗e6 33 ♗e3 b5?!

Only very few saving chances are offered by 33...♗b6.

34 ♗f5 ♗b6 35 ♗xh6 ♗c4 36 ♗f5 ♗f7

Forced, due to the threat of h6-h7-h8♖!

37 b3 ♗d2+ 38 ♗e3 1-0

Karpov – Andersson

Olympiad, Thessaloniki 1988

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♗f3 ♗b4+ 4 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 5 ♖xd2 0-0

Black can also play 5...d5 6 ♗c3 0-0 7 e3 ♖e7 8 ♗d1 b6 9 cxd5 exd5 10 ♗e2 ♗bd7 11 0-0 ♗b7, Sisniega-Spassky, Thessaloniki OL 1988.

6 g3 d5 7 ♗g2 (D)

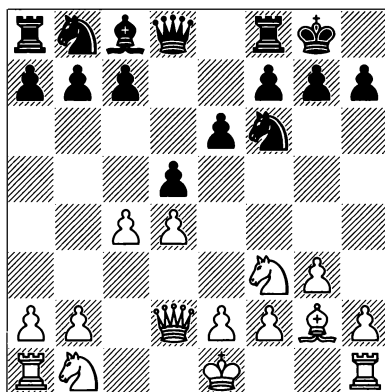
7...♗bd7

Another possibility for Black is 7...c6 8 0-0 ♖e7 9 ♗c1 ♗d8 10 ♖e3 ♗d7 11 ♗bd2 ♗e8 12 a3 a5 13 ♖f4 (13 c5!? a4 14 ♗e5 ♗f7 15 ♗d3 and White is better, Timman-P.Nikolić, Reykjavik 1998) 13...♗a6 14 g4! c5 15 g5 with advantage for White, Timman-P.Nikolić, Tilburg 1988.

8 0-0 c6 9 ♗c1 ♖e7 10 ♖e3!? ♗e8

In Spassky-Andersson, Belfort 1988, Black continued with 10...♗d8 11 cxd5 ♗xd5 12 ♖a3

B



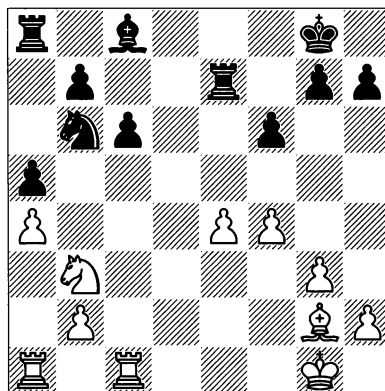
h6 13 e3 ♗f8 14 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 15 ♗bd2 e5 16 ♗c4 exd4 17 ♗xd4 but White retained a plus.

11 ♗bd2 e5 12 dxe5 ♗xe5 13 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 14 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 15 cxd5 ♗xd5 16 e4 ♗b6

Another Karpov-Andersson game, in Belfort 1988, went 16...♗c7 17 ♗c4 ♗e7 18 ♗a5 ♗f8 19 b4 ♗b8 20 a4 ♗e6 21 ♗ab1 a6 22 f4 with a slight advantage for White.

17 f4 ♗e7 18 a4 a5 19 ♗b3! f6 (D)

W



White has a slight advantage thanks to the fact that his kingside pawn-majority is more active than Black's on the queenside, his better central control, the better bishop and the possibility of his knight pressurizing the black queenside from c5.

20 ♗a3!

The white rook prepares to apply pressure on the queenside by its transfer to b3. 20 ♗c5 would have been premature due to 20...♗d7!.

20...♗e6 21 ♗c5! ♗f7

Compulsory, as after 21...♞d8 22 ♜xe6 ♞xe6 23 ♞b3 Black's position collapses.

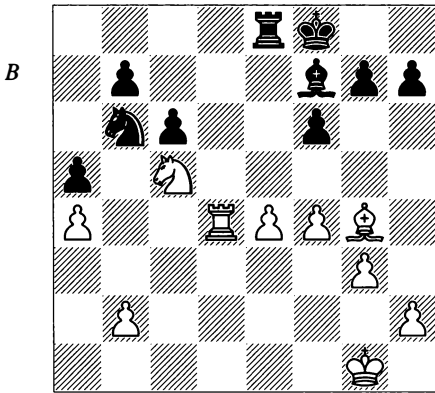
22 ♞d3 ♞ae8 23 ♟h3 ♜c8

Black could not play 23...♟g6 24 ♞b3 ♜xa4 25 ♜xa4 ♞xe4 26 ♜c5 ♞el+ 27 ♞xe1 ♞xe1+ 28 ♟f2 ♞h1 29 ♟e6+, but 23...g6 24 ♞d4 f5!? was interesting.

24 ♟d7 ♞d8 25 ♞cd1

By attacking the b-pawn White forces the black knight to return to its post.

25...♜b6 26 ♟g4 ♞xd3 27 ♞xd3 ♟f8 28 ♞d8+ ♞e8 29 ♞d4! (D)



Now the threat of 30 b4! is truly dangerous and Black can meet it in only one way.

29...♞b8 30 ♞d7!

With the help of tactical devices, White transforms his positional superiority into material gain.

30...h5 31 ♟h3 ♟e8 32 ♞c7 ♜a8 33 ♞xb7 ♞xb7 34 ♜xb7 ♜b6 35 ♜d6+!

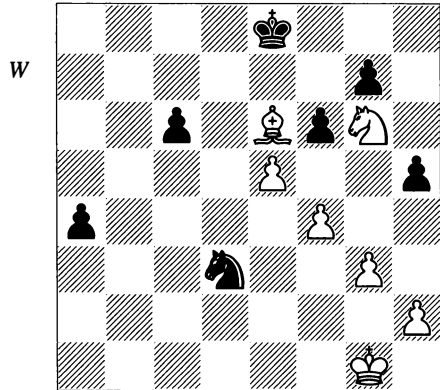
White could also win with 35 ♜c5 ♟e7 36 b3! ♜d6 37 ♜b7+ ♟c7 38 ♜xa5 ♜xa4 39 bxa4 ♟b6 40 ♜xc6.

35...♟e7 36 ♜xf7 ♜xa4!?

Played in an effort to complicate the position, as 36...♟xf7 37 b3 would not leave Black any hope.

37 ♜h8! ♜xb2 38 e5 a4 39 ♜g6+ ♟e8
Nothing would change after 39...♟f7 40 e6+ ♟e8 (40...♟xg6 41 f5+) 41 ♟g2.

40 ♟e6 ♜d3 (D)



41 ♟g8

With the idea of playing 42 e6, 43 ♟f7+ and 44 e7+.

41...fxe5

No salvation is offered by 41...♜b4 42 e6 ♜d5 43 ♟f7+ ♜d8 44 e7+ ♜xe7 45 ♜xe7 ♟xe7.

42 ♜xe5 ♜b4 43 ♜c4 h4 44 ♟h7 hxg3 45 hxg3 ♟e7 46 ♟e4 ♟f6 47 g4 ♟e6 48 ♟f2 ♜d5 49 ♟f3 ♜b4 50 g5 c5 51 f5+ ♟e7 52 ♟e3 ♟f8 53 ♟d2 ♟e7 54 ♟c3 1-0

Black lost the game practically without making any obvious positional or tactical mistake. Anatoly Karpov exploited three key aspects of modern chess, that he deeply knew, studied and improved during his career:

- 1) *Knowledge* (in order to obtain the advantage).
- 2) *Understanding* (in order to increase the advantage).
- 3) *Technique* (in order to convert the advantage into victory).

Immobilization

The concept of immobilization (related to Nimzowitsch's concept of *blockade*) is not just an important technical tool in modern chess but also a fundamental strategic element guiding our plans.

The available methods of play with regard to our opponent's pieces can be classified as follows:

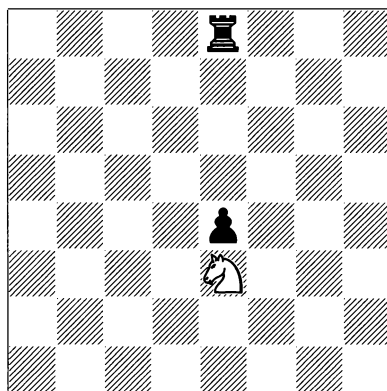
- 1) Capture
- 2) Exchange
- 3) Attack
- 4) Immobilize

An attacked piece may choose among several different options. Retreat is the simplest one, but it can also be supported. The main idea of immobilization is to drain the opposing piece of its activity, so as to attack it in the future. Immobilization can generally be effected against any of the opponent's pieces, but it mostly occurs against pawns. Indeed, pawns, although they are most dangerous when set in motion, are easy to immobilize. Consequently, the term 'immobilization' mainly refers to the mechanical obstruction of an enemy pawn by a piece. This mechanical obstruction of the enemy pawns is effected by placing one of our pieces on the square right in front of the target pawn.

But which are the most suitable pieces to use for immobilization? First of all the knight, as it can not only immobilize the enemy pawn but also attack squares behind it. Then, the bishop, as it possesses the special ability to immobilize more than one enemy pawn along a diagonal. Major pieces (queen and rook) and the king may undertake immobilization missions, but their vulnerability (when attacked by pieces of lesser value they have to retreat) is a negative aspect. Finally, in certain cases immobilization can be effected by pawns as well.

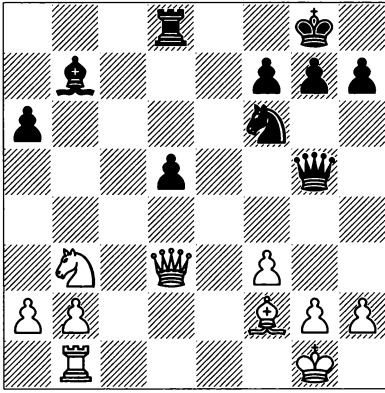
In order to comprehend the concept of immobilization it is necessary to understand the generic behaviour of the pawn. One of its main

characteristics is its desire to advance and conquer space. The effectiveness of the pawn increases as it advances. It is also important to note that the immobilizing piece, besides this obligation, usually finds itself very well placed (see the following diagram). It would be illogical to waste precious firepower just to obstruct a pawn. Immobilization squares are in fact outposts, while, in some cases, they also serve as advance guards. The immobilizing pieces must retain their flexibility, so as to rush to another part of the board if necessary.



Immobilization of an enemy pawn does not affect only the pawn itself; such a view clearly lacks depth. In fact, whole complexes of enemy pieces suffer the consequences of immobilization, manoeuvring potential is reduced in large parts of the board and in some cases the strategic element of immobilization becomes the essence of the position. In short, the lack of mobility of the pawn is conveyed upon its entire army.

If it were Black's turn to move in the following diagram, he would achieve excellent coordination of his pieces by the sacrificial advance 1...d4!. The scope of his rook, bishop and knight would dramatically increase, resulting in the



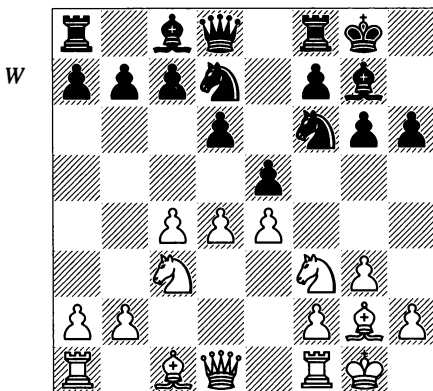
creation of powerful tactical threats. If, however, it is White to move, by playing 1 d4! he can dominate the position and fight for victory without facing any danger whatsoever.

In general, the desire to stop a moving pawn-mass is understandable. However, the fact that sometimes it is useful to immobilize pawns that are not, one way or another, able to move freely can perhaps trouble us. The restriction of the opponent's possible initiative or the plan to transform an enemy pawn into a target are factors very relevant to our decisions.

Dizdarević – Grivas

Balkaniad, Kavala 1990

1 d4 f3 d6 2 c4 g6 3 d4 e7 4 g3 0-0 5 e2 d6 6 c3 d7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4 h6!? (D)



A relatively unexplored line, leading to original positions that are rich in ideas. Its primary

aim is to weaken White's control over the d4-square by exchanging the f3-knight, while simultaneously paving the way for an advance of the f-pawn.

9 e1

Or:

a) 9 c2 d7 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 d1 (11 h3 c6 12 e3 d5 13 dxe5 hxe5 14 d2 f6 15 d1 e7 = Koyas-Grivas, Komotini 1992) 11...c6 12 b4 e8 13 e3 e7 14 c5 a5 15 a3 d5 16 dxe5 hxe5 = Kochiev-Grivas, St Petersburg 1989.

b) 9 b1 d7 10 e3 d5 11 e1 d6 12 d5 d4 is unclear, Davies-Grivas, Rishon le Zion 1993.

c) In an effort to 'dissect' the variation, the most popular line is 9 h3 d7 10 e3 d5 and now:

c1) 11 d5?! dxf3+ 12 xf3 f5 13 d2 f6 14 g2 f4 with advantage for Black, Muco-Grivas, Athens 1990.

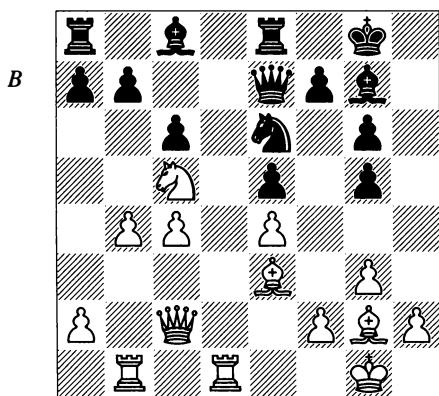
c2) 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 h2 d6 14 xd8 xd8 15 d1 e8! with a satisfactory position, Moutousis-Grivas, Athens 1991.

c3) 11 dxe5 hxe5 12 c1 (12 d2 exd4 13 dxd4 d5 14 c1 g4 15 hxg4 dxe4 16 f4 a6 17 d2 f6 18 f3 d5 19 b3 e7 20 a4 c5 1/2-1/2 Galliamova-Grivas, Dortmund 1992) 12...exd4 (12...c6?! 13 d5 c5 14 d2 f6 15 a3 e7 16 g4 b6 17 b4 and White is better, I.Nikolaïdis-Grivas, Athens 1993) 13 d4 (1/2-1/2 Fancsy-Grivas, Budapest 1994) 13...d5 14 c5 (14 b3 c5 15 e3 a6 16 g4 e6 17 d2 f6 18 cd1 d6 19 d2 is unclear, Kolev-Grivas, Ankara 1993) 14...g4! (14...dxc5?! 15 xc5 e8 16 xd8 xd8 17 e7 d2 18 fd1 xd1+ 19 xd1 e6 20 d5 xd5 21 exd5 with an edge for White, Wojtkiewicz-Grivas, Athens 1992) 15 hxg4 xg4 16 f3 e6 17 f4 g4 18 a4 d7 1/2-1/2 Degerman-Grivas, Gausdal 1993.

9...d7 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 c2

White is treating the opening without any particular ambition, allowing Black to equalize without any undue effort.

11...d5 12 dxe5 hxe5 13 e3 c6 14 b4 e8 15 d1 e7 16 b1 d8 17 a4 d6 18 d5 (D)



Black should be satisfied with his position and can retain equal chances with 18...g4!. However, he decided to complicate the position by altering the pawn-structure, based on a mistaken evaluation of the resulting position.

18...♘d4? 19 ♙xd4 exd4 20 ♘d3!

The white knight has been 'upgraded' to an excellent immobilizing piece, blocking the path of the passed black d-pawn that has now been (for the time being, at least) neutralized. Black's bishops have no scope, while White's kingside pawn-majority may prove significant. In conclusion, Black has obtained a passed pawn and the bishop-pair, and stands worse(!), precisely due to the excellent immobilization effected by the d3-knight.

20...a5?!

Better was 20...g4 but Black is anxious to open some lines for his bishops.

21 b5! c5 22 b6!

The 'weak' black c-pawn, attacked by the d3-knight, hampers the coordination of the black pieces.

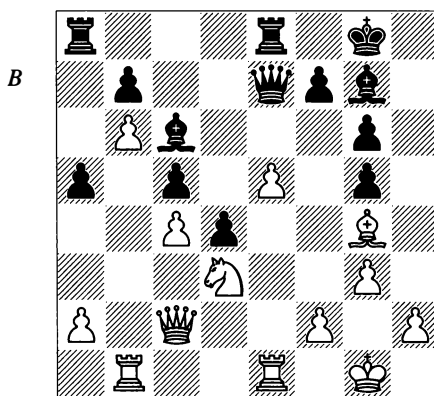
22...♙d7 23 ♖e1 ♗ec8 24 e5 ♙c6 25 ♙h3! ♗e8 26 ♙g4 (D)

The black pieces act randomly, in sharp contrast to their white counterparts that apply concrete pressure on both flanks.

26...a4 27 a3 ♗d8 28 ♗e2 ♗e7 29 ♗b2 ♗a6 30 ♗d1 ♗d8 31 ♗b1 ♗a5 32 h3 ♙d7 33 ♙f3 ♗c8 34 ♙h2! ♙f5 35 ♗d1?!

35 ♙e4! is obviously better. White must prevent the exchange of the d3-knight.

35...♙e6?! 36 ♗c1 ♙f5 37 ♗d2 ♗a6? 38 ♗b5?



White could have won immediately with the simple 38 ♙xb7!.

38...♙xd3 39 ♗xd3 ♙xe5 40 ♙d5 ♗g7 41 ♗g2 ♗a8?

A serious error. Not without White's help, Black has managed to defend and could now secure half a point with 41...♗e7!.

42 ♗f3! ♗f5

Compulsory (42...♗e7 43 ♗xe5!).

43 ♙xb7 ♙d6 44 ♗eb1 ♗ab8 45 ♗xf5 gxf5 46 ♙f3 f4 47 g4

The position is now won for White, as his passed b-pawn is more significant than the black d-pawn, while Black's queenside weaknesses will also prove serious.

47...♗ed8 48 ♗a5 d3 49 ♗xa4 ♙e5 50 ♗a5 ♙d4 51 ♗ab5 d2 52 a4 ♙c3 53 a5 d1 ♗ 54 ♗xd1 1-0

Grivas – Makropoulos

Athens 1988

1 d4 d6 2 c4 e5 3 ♘f3

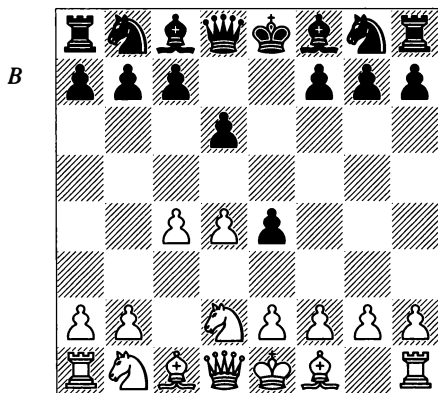
Another possibility is 3 ♘c3 exd4 (3...♘c6?! 4 d5 ♘ce7 5 g3 f5 6 ♘f3 ♘f6 7 ♙g2 c5 8 ♘g5 with advantage for White, Csom-Suttles, Surakarta/Denpasar 1982) 4 ♗xd4 ♘c6 5 ♗d2! g6 6 ♘f3 ♙g7 7 e3 ± Pähitz-Popchev, Plovdiv 1988. 3 dxe5 dxe5 4 ♗xd8+ ♘xd8 only leads to equality according to Seirawan, and practice more than bears this out.

3...e4

3...♘d7 would lead to the familiar Old Indian Defence.

4 ♘fd2!? (D)

An interesting continuation, in place of the common 4 ♖g5 f5 5 f3 ♙e7 6 ♖h3 ♖f6 7 ♖c3 0-0 8 ♖f2, Grivas-Rukavina, Sofia 1986.



4...f5 5 e3 ♖f6 6 ♖c3 c6 7 ♙e2

White should refrain from 7 d5?! c5!, when Black plans ...♖d7-e5 and ...h6/...g5 with the initiative.

7...d5?!

A dubious move, as we now have on the board a kind of French Defence with two extra tempi for White: one due to the right of the first move and one because Black has played ...d5 in two steps. 7...♙e7 had to be preferred.

8 ♖b3! a6 9 a4

Black was planning 9...b5, proceeding to clarify the situation on the queenside. It was also possible to play the immediate 9 c5 but White is in no hurry, retaining the pressure on the d5- and b7-pawns and along the a2-g8 diagonal.

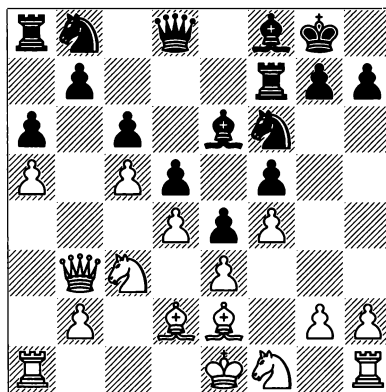
9...♙e7 10 a5 0-0 11 f4!

An excellent move, immobilizing the black f5-pawn. As 11...exf3? 12 ♖xf3 leads to a clear advantage for White, Black is deprived of his most fundamental plan in this pawn-structure, i.e. the future advance ...f4. Consequently, his prospects are bleak. It must be mentioned that the seemingly 'attractive' 11 cxd5 cxd5 12 ♖xd5? ♖xd5 13 ♙c4 ♙e6 14 ♖xb7 ♖d7!! 15 ♖xa8 ♖c6 16 ♖xa6 ♖cb4 would amount to a terrible mistake.

11...♖f7 12 ♖f1 ♙f8 13 ♙d2 ♙e6 14 c5! (D)

Preventing the – now favourable for Black – exchanges on c4 and immobilizing the queenside so as to prepare queenside castling. Later

B



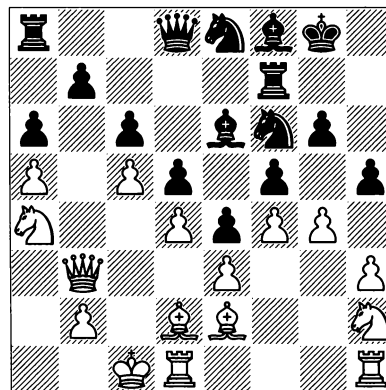
on White will develop play on the kingside by means of the break g4.

14...♖e8 15 ♖a4 ♖d7 16 0-0-0 ♖df6 17 h3! g6 18 ♖h2 h5?

Black should reinforce his defences with 18...♖c8 and ...♖cc7. His last move further weakens his king while not preventing White's intended pawn-break.

19 g4 (D)

B



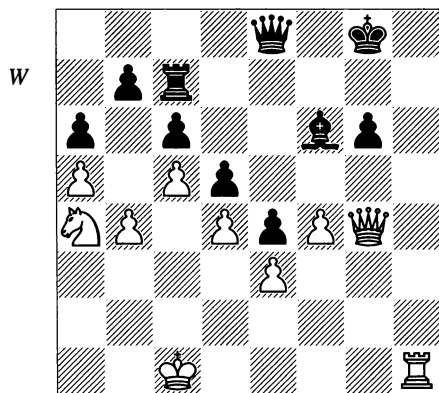
19...hxg4?!

19...♖h7 is better. Black fails to understand the problems he is facing and 'refuses' to proceed passively but solidly.

20 hxg4 ♖xg4 21 ♖xg4 fxg4 22 ♖d1 ♖f6 23 ♙e1!

White's plan is now justified as he will be able (after ♙h4xf6) to recover his pawn. Naturally, some preparatory moves are necessary, but there is ample time for that as Black lacks any substantial threats.

23...♙e7 24 ♖d1 ♜c8 25 b4 ♜c7 26 ♙h4
 ♜h7 27 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 28 ♙xg4 ♙xg4 29 ♖xg4
 ♜xh1 30 ♜xh1 ♜e8 (D)



White's superiority has acquired large proportions and is owed to his safer king, the better placement of his major pieces, his superior minor piece (as the pawn-structure is fixed), and to Black's inferior pawn-structure, as the pawns on g6 and b7 can easily become targets. It is important for White to activate his knight by placing it deep in Black's camp, from where it will constitute a permanent threat.

31 ♖b6 ♙g7

Exchanging rooks with 31...♜h7 would allow the white knight's invasion (♖c8-d6) inside Black's lines.

32 ♙d1 ♙f7 33 ♜f1 ♙g8 34 ♜g1 ♙h7 35 ♖g5!? ♜e6?

A mistake in time-pressure. Black's only option was 35...♜f7 36 ♖g4 ♜e8 37 ♖g3! threatening 38 f5, with a decisive advantage for White. 35 ♖g5!? was just a 'free' trap, as White could repeat the position at will.

36 ♜h1+ ♙g8 37 ♜d8+ ♙f8 38 ♖xc7 ♖g4+ 39 ♙c1 1-0

Grivas – Kokkinos

Thessaloniki 1988

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♖f3 c5 4 e3 ♖f6 5 a3 cxd4 6 exd4 ♖c6 7 ♖c3 ♙e7

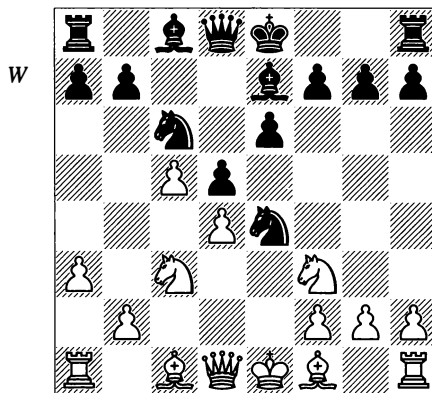
7...dxc4 8 ♙xc4 leads to the Queen's Gambit Accepted. The direct 7...♖e4 is interesting; e.g., 8 ♙d3 ♖xc3 9 bxc3 dxc4 10 ♙xc4 ♙e7 11 0-0

0-0 12 ♜e1 b6 13 ♙d3 ♙b7 with unclear play, Petursson-Yudasin, Reykjavik tt 1996.

8 c5

Also acceptable is 8 ♙d3 0-0 9 0-0 b6 10 cxd5 exd5 11 h3 h6 12 ♜e1 ♙b7 13 ♙f4 ± Petursson-Jonasson, Icelandic Ch (Gardabaer) 1996.

8...♖e4 (D)



9 ♙b5

Another option is 9 ♜c2 f5 10 ♙b5 ♙f6 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♙xc6 bxc6 13 ♙f4, as in both Holz-Kharlov, Vienna 1996 and Kharlov-Baturin, Zepter 1998.

9...0-0 10 0-0 f5?!

Black unjustifiably weakens the e5-square, relying on tactical details. 10...♙d7 11 ♜e1 b6!? seems more correct, as in Holzke-Roos, Bundesliga 1998/9.

11 ♙xc6 bxc6 12 ♖e5

12 ♙f4?! is premature in view of 12...g5!.

12...♜c7 13 ♖d3 e5!?

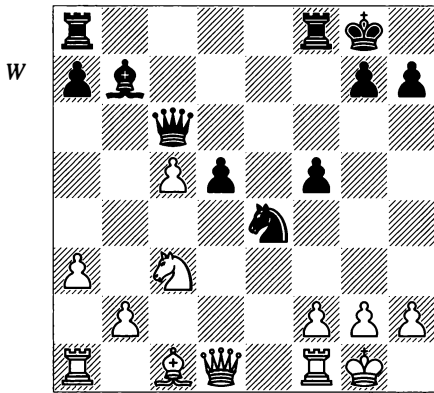
13...♙f6? is bad due to 14 ♙f4 ♜b7 15 ♙e5!, but 13...♙a6 14 ♜e1 ♙xd3 15 ♜xd3 ♙f6 ± deserved attention.

14 ♖xe5 ♙xc5 15 ♖xc6 ♜xc6 16 dxc5 ♙b7? (D)

A serious error. After the obligatory 16...♖xc3 17 bxc3 ♜xc5 18 ♙e3 ♜c6 19 ♙d4 White retains a slight edge thanks to his clearly better bishop, but Black possesses quite decent defensive possibilities.

17 ♖e2!

Planning to immobilize and effectively 'neutralize' the black d5-pawn, which is ready to



advance. In this way Black's offensive potential is extinguished, the b7-bishop is locked out of the action, while White's queenside majority will prove mobile and useful.

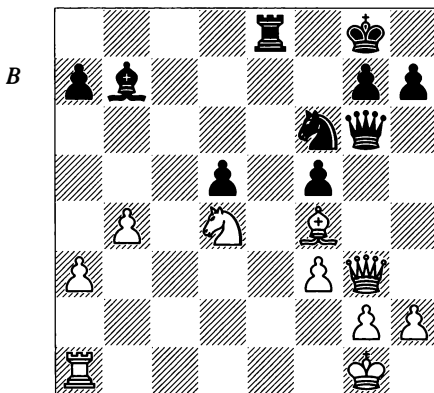
17...xc5 18 d4 g6 19 b4 d7?!

Black should have focused on his defensive duties with 19...e6 20 xe6 (20 b2!?) 20...xe6 21 e1 c6 22 d4 c4 23 b2 xd4 24 xd4, with White still better but also Black retaining good chances of survival.

20 f4 f6 21 e1 f8 22 f3!

Taking the important e4-square and keeping Black's threats (...e4 or ...e4) under control.

22...xe1+ 23 xel e8 24 g3! (D)



The exchange of queens will further highlight Black's weaknesses (a7, d5 and b7) in the resulting endgame.

24...h5 25 xg6 hxg6 26 d6 e3?

An oversight in time-trouble. Black should have waited with 26...f6 or 26...c8.

27 c5! a6 28 xf5!

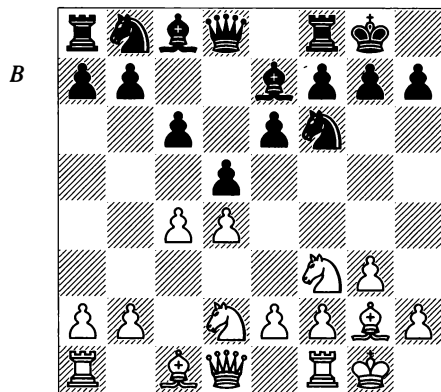
White has won a pawn while retaining his positional advantage.

28...e2 29 d4 b2 30 g3 c8 31 e1 h3 32 e2 b1+ 33 f2 d7 34 e7 h3 35 e2 b2 36 d4 a2 37 a4 f8 38 c5 xa4 39 g4 f6 40 f4 1-0

Grivas – Papaioannou

Volos 1996

1 d4 f6 2 f3 e6 3 g3 d5 4 g2 e7 5 0-0 0-0 6 c4 c6 7 bd2 (D)



7...b5?!

A novelty of doubtful merit, as it weakens the c5-square without gaining anything substantial in return.

8 cxb5 cxb5 9 b3

9 e5! b6 10 b3 bd7 11 g5 also seems good, with a slight but permanent advantage for White.

9...a5! 10 f4

10 g5 fd7! leads to equality.

10...a6 11 e5 b7

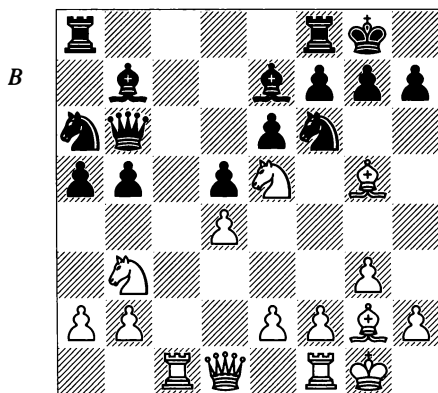
Not, of course, **11...b6? 12 xa5!.**

12 c1 b6 13 g5! (D)

An excellent move, retaining White's initiative. It is hard to achieve success on one flank only, so White is considering play on the other wing as well. His extra space allows the comfortable and efficient realization of his ideas.

13...fd8

13...fc8? is mistaken: **14 xf6 gxf6 15 d7 d6 16 dc5 ±.**



14 e3! h6!

Black proceeds carefully, as 14...♖ac8?! 15 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 16 ♘g4 would leave White clearly better.

15 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 16 f4 b4?

The wrong path. Black should have stuck to his effort to equalize with 16...a4 17 ♘d2 (17 ♘c5!?) 17...♜ac8.

17 ♜h5! ♜xe5 18 fxe5 ♜f8 19 ♜f4!

White's advantage has grown and his threats, now on the kingside, are serious.

19...a4 20 ♘d2 b3 21 a3!

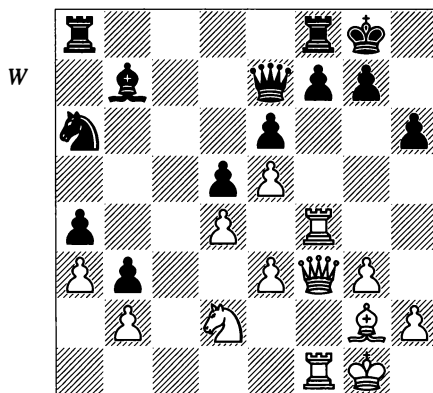
White, true to the basic principles of attack, immobilizes the queenside so as not to be distracted from his operations on the other flank. 21 axb3? ♜b4! 22 ♜c3? a3! would have been unacceptable.

21...♜d8 22 ♜cf1 ♜g5 23 ♜f3 ♜e7? (D)

The only chance was 23...f5! 24 exf6 ♜xf6 25 ♜xf6 gxf6 26 ♜xf6! ♜xf6 (26...♜xe3+? 27 ♜f2) 27 ♜xf6, when Black retains good chances of survival despite his material deficit, due to the weak white b-pawn.

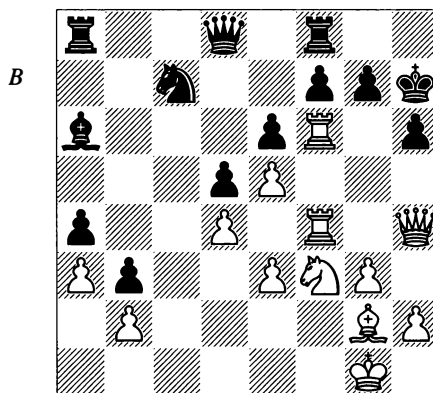
24 ♜f6!

White has transferred his forces to the kingside, where Black lacks adequate defence. The black pieces were tied up with the protection of the queenside, where they managed to defend successfully, but are now far from the main theatre of action. With his last move White immobilizes the black f-pawn that, with its freeing



advance, would allow Black drawing chances (as described in the previous comment) and simultaneously cuts the black queen off from its defensive duties.

24...♘c7 25 ♜g4 ♜a6 26 ♜1f4 ♘h7 27 ♜h4! ♜d8 28 ♘f3! (D)



Now that almost all the white pieces are participating in the attack, the black king's fortress will soon collapse.

28...gxf6 29 ♜xf6 ♜d3

There is no longer any defence for Black, as neither 29...♜xf6 30 exf6 ♜g8 31 ♘e5 ♜af8 32 ♜f3 ♜b5 33 ♜h5 ♜e8 34 ♘g4! nor 29...♜h8 30 ♘g5+ ♜g8 31 ♘xf7 is sufficient. The finish was brief:

30 ♘g5+ ♜g8 31 ♜xh6 1-0

Index of Games

List of Efstratios Grivas's Opponents

Numbers refer to pages. When a page number appears in **bold**, Grivas had White. Otherwise his opponent had White.

Abramović	67	Kožul	71
Andersson	49	Loginov	25
Avrukh	28	Makropoulos	104
Barlov	17	Mastrokoukos	75
Bellia	18	Matulović	77
Burgess, M.	44	Nenashev	70
Cela	79	Nikolaidis, I.	31, 96
Dezan	84	Oney	37
Dimitriadis, K.	14	Pandavos, P.	41
Dizdarević	103	Papaioannou	107
Elsness	89	Papandreou	51
Gazis	74	Paunović, D.	81
Gelashvili	83	Schuh	12
Gurieli	33	Smagin	16
Hector	22	Smirin	35
Kalesis	21, 91	Tsiotridis	19
Kanavarakis	43	Velikov	93
Khetsuriani	23	Vera	87
Kofidis, A.	52	Vidarsson	39
Kokkinos	106		

Other Games

When a player's name appears in **bold**, that player had White. Otherwise the FIRST-NAMED PLAYER had White.

ANDERSSON – **Karpov** 100; **Ljubojević** 56; **Shirov** 94
AVERBAKH – **Taimanov** 90
BAUER – **Lasker, Em.** 58
BLATNY – **Gamboa** 60
BRUNO – Stull 62
FILATOV – Mayer 60
FURMAN – **Kirilov** 62
GAMBOA – Blatny 60

GIZELAK – **Pinkas** 55
GRECO – NN 47
GROSZPETER – Radulov 53
HOFFMANN, A. – **Reeh** 54
HÜBNER – Korchnoi 56
IVANOVIĆ – Sokolov, A. 65
JUNGE – Kottnauer 64
KARPOV – Andersson 100; Seirawan 98
KENGIS – Wilder 56
KIRILOV – Furman 62
KORCHNOI – **Hübner** 56
KOTTNAUER – **Junge** 64
KUZMIN, G. – Sveshnikov 61
LANGEWEG – **Stein, B.** 54
LANKA – Malaniuk 53
LASKER, EM. – Bauer 58
LJUBOJEVIĆ – Andersson 56
MALANIUK – **Lanka** 53
MAYER – **Filatov** 60
MILOV, V. – **Tataev** 62
MOISEEV – **Noakh** 64
NAJDORF – Ståhlberg 29
NIMZOWITSCH – Tarrasch 59
NN – **Greco** 47
NOAKH – Moiseev 64
O'KELLY – Palacios 63
PALACIOS – **O'Kelly** 63
PINKAS – Gizelak 55
POLUGAEVSKY – Tal 47
RADULOV – **Groszpeter** 53
REEH – Hoffmann, A. 54
SEIRAWAN – **Karpov** 98
SHIROV – Andersson 94
SOKOLOV, A. – **Ivanović** 65
STÅHLBERG – **Najdorf** 29
STEIN, B. – Langeweg 54
STULL – **Bruno** 62
SVESHNIKOV – **Kuzmin, G.** 61
TAIMANOV – Averbakh 90
TAL – **Polugaevsky** 47
TARRASCH – **Nimzowitsch** 59
TATAEV – Milov, V. 62
WILDER – **Kengis** 56

Index of Openings

Numbers refer to pages. Codes are ECO codes.

Flank Openings

A03 58; A05 94

English Opening

A21 104; A24 37; A26 93; A31 12

Queen's Pawn Misc.

A41 31; A46 39, 56, 67, 83; A47 62; A49 96;
A52 60; A54 44; A55 17; A58 75

Modern Benoni

A72 14

Dutch Defence

A80 87

Pirc Defence

B07 53

Caro-Kann Defence

B14 106

Sicilian Defence

B22 33; B32 22; B33 18, 41, 79; B49 61; B53
19; B85 56, 65

French Defence

C00 47, 54

1 e4 e5 Misc.

C29 55; C55 54

Ruy Lopez (Spanish)

C65 53; C77 62; C82 56, 77

1 d4 d5 Misc.

D05 60, 64

Queen's Gambit

D20 98; D30 59, 62; D41 47; D42 63; D46
49, 52, 64; D58 43; D67 29

Grünfeld Defence

D85 71; D91 28

Catalan Opening

E06 107

Bogo-Indian Defence

E11 25, 51, 100

Queen's Indian Defence

E14 74; E19 23

Nimzo-Indian Defence

E52 90

King's Indian Defence

E68 81, 103; E69 84; E71 35; E72 16; E80
89; E81 21, 91; E92 70

The Seven Deadly Chess Sins

Jonathan Rowson

"He has broken ranks by writing about playing chess as it actually is rather than it ought to be and should be greatly commended for this. This is a book which, in contrast to the vast majority of its brethren, I will continue to visit and revisit" – GM Jon Speelman, *THE INDEPENDENT*
208 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$24.95 / £16.99

Grandmaster Chess Move By Move

John Nunn

The king of chess writers provides another irresistible mixture: instructive games, opening novelties, entertaining anecdotes and thought-provoking ideas.
288 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$24.95 / £15.99

Chess College 1: Strategy

Efstratios Grivas

A wealth of chess instruction on a variety of topics, including: training, attack on the king, exchange sacrifices, positional sacrifices, semi-open files and foreposts.
112 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$19.95 / £12.99

Chess College 2: Pawn Play

Efstratios Grivas

This second volume in the series teaches all aspects of pawn play that are vital to successful chess. Topics include: passed pawns, isolated pawns, doubled pawns, backward pawns, pawn majorities and minorities, and central breaks.
112 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$19.95 / £12.99

Secrets of Chess Defence

Mihail Marin

"Maximize your chances of survival with this guide to defense and counter-attack." – Mark Donlan, *CHESS HORIZONS*
176 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$24.95 / £15.99

How to Beat Your Dad at Chess

Murray Chandler

Teaches the 50 Deadly Checkmates – basic attacking patterns that occur repeatedly in games between players of all standards. Each mating motif is carefully and simply explained.
128 pages, 226 x 174 mm, hardback
\$14.95 / £9.99

Improve Your Positional Chess

Carsten Hansen

"Carsten Hansen is developing into a very reliable author, and this book only serves to enhance his growing reputation." – Alan Sutton, *EN PASSANT*
192 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$25.95 / £14.99

The Road to Chess Improvement

Alex Yermolinsky

Improve your game with the help of some straight-talking advice from former US Champion Yermolinsky. This classic won the Chess Journalists of America Award for Best Chess Book.
224 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$24.95 / £17.99

Fundamental Chess Endings

Karsten Müller & Frank Lamprecht

In addition to a feast of detailed analysis, the authors emphasize the practical side of endgame play with rules of thumb and general principles.
416 pages, 248 x 172 mm; \$29.95 / £19.99

Decision-Making at the Chessboard

Viacheslav Eingorn

"Eingorn deals with a completely neglected subject in chess literature ... very interesting reading. The reader gains an insight into the thinking process of a grandmaster" – Thomas Schian, *ROCHADE*
208 pages, 210 x 145 mm; \$24.95 / £15.99

About the Publisher: Gambit is a chess publishing company run exclusively by chess masters and grandmasters. With over 140 chess books in print, there is an extensive selection of titles to assist intermediate-level players to improve. Gambit books are widely used in chess schools and chess camps as training material for students.

GAMBIT

www.gambitbooks.com

Chess College is a series of books that will take intermediate players to new levels of chess understanding. Efstratios Grivas, a grandmaster and highly experienced chess trainer, provides a wealth of instruction on many aspects of chess middlegames. The emphasis is on practical understanding: whenever he introduces a new idea, Grivas immediately illustrates it with a number of entertaining and instructive examples. Many of these games are fresh examples drawn from his own practice, which has the great benefit that he can explain with authority what was going on over the board.

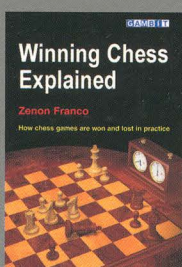
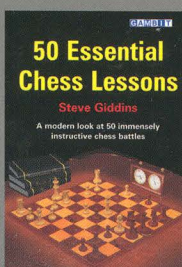
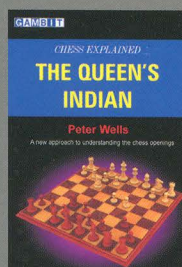
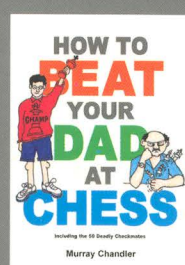
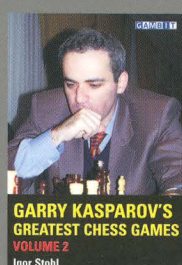
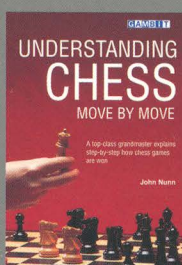
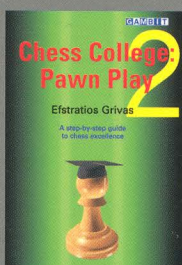
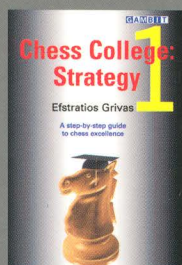
Volume 3: Technique features many training tips and discusses important topics such as:

- Physical and Psychological Factors
- Bishop vs knight
- Standard sacrifices against the castled position
- Opposite-coloured bishops
- Immobilization
- How to handle won positions and lost positions
- Small advantages

Grandmaster **Efstratios Grivas** lives in Athens and is also an International Arbiter and Organizer. He has represented his country on a great many occasions, winning an individual gold medal at the 1989 European Team Championship and an individual silver medal at the 1998 Olympiad. He is a FIDE Senior Trainer, a Greek federal trainer and an experienced writer.



Other chess titles from Gambit include:



£12.99

\$19.95

ISBN-13: 978-1-904600-57-2
ISBN-10: 1-904600-57-3



9 781904 600572 >